Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A - Z

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

128i 135i Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

BMW recommends Castrol

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

© 2009 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the
written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English VIII/09, 09 09 500
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index beginning on page 232.

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
21 Letters and numbers
22 Voice activation system

Controls
26 Opening and closing
43 Adjustments
52 Transporting children safely
55 Driving
63 Controls overview
75 Technology for driving comfort and safety
86 Lamps
91 Climate
96 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
108 Things to remember when driving

Navigation
116 Navigation system
117 Destination entry
126 Destination guidance
133 What to do if ...

Entertainment
136 On/off and tone
139 Radio
142 Satellite radio
147 CD/DVD player and CD changer
154 Music collection
159 External devices

Communications
166 Telephone
178 Contacts
180 BMW Assist

Mobility
188 Refueling
190 Wheels and tires
198 Under the hood
203 Maintenance
205 Care
209 Replacing components
215 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
222 Technical data
227 Short commands for the voice activation system
232 Everything from A-Z

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have tried to make all the information in this Owner's Manual easy to find. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be glad to advise you at any time.

Information on BMW, e.g. on technical aspects, can also be found on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional accessories, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When you ordered your BMW, you chose various items of equipment. This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available with a specific BMW model.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible in exceptional cases that features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repair

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and powerful electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. You should therefore have the corresponding work on your vehicle performed only by your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.

When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Original BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.

BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.

BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.

BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants.

Original BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.

Installation and operation of accessories not approved by BMW, such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radio or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

California Proposition 65 warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts,

FarmaSos.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.

Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

فرمان خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSCS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your center, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱۸۸۸۴۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

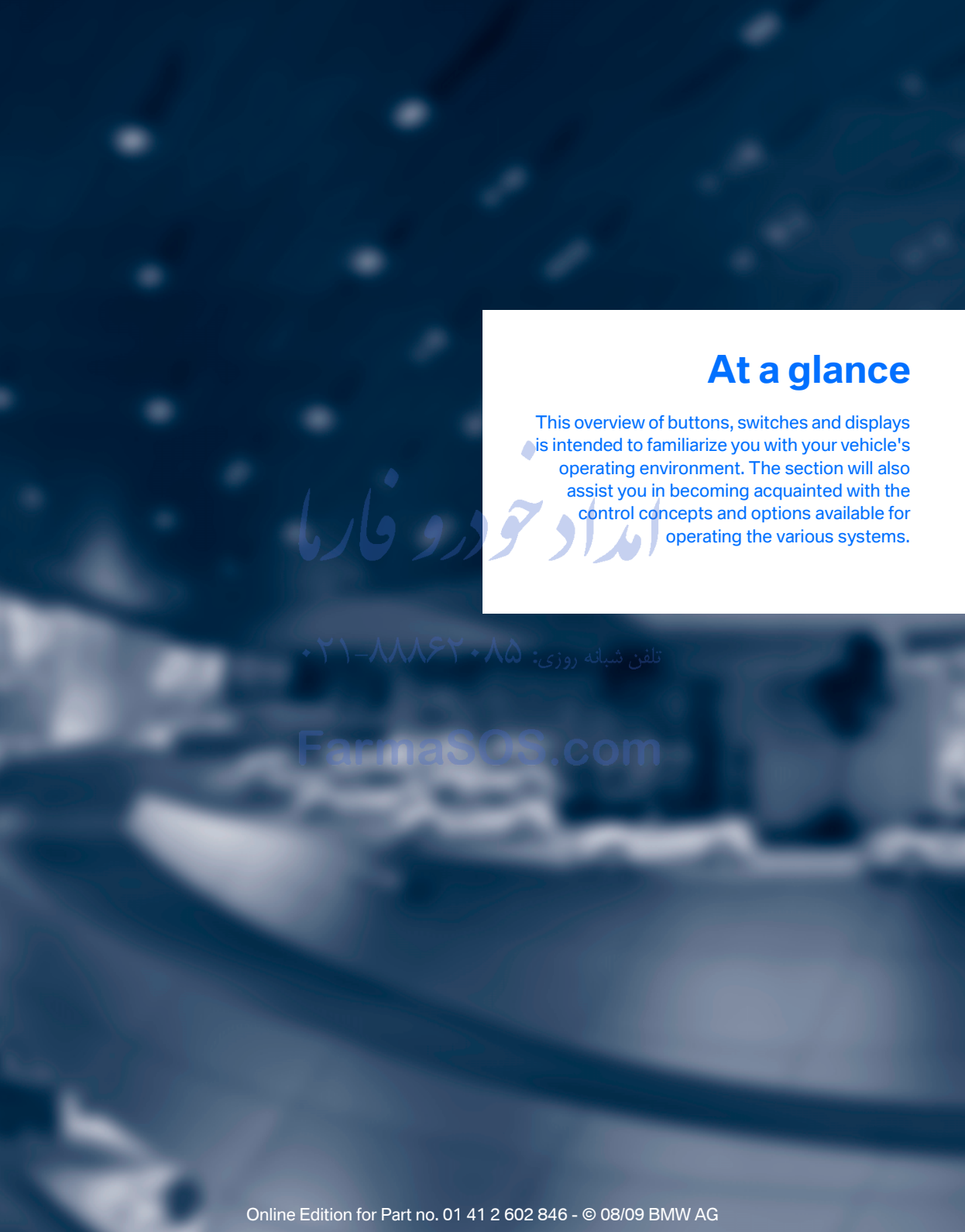
For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن خانه روزت ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG



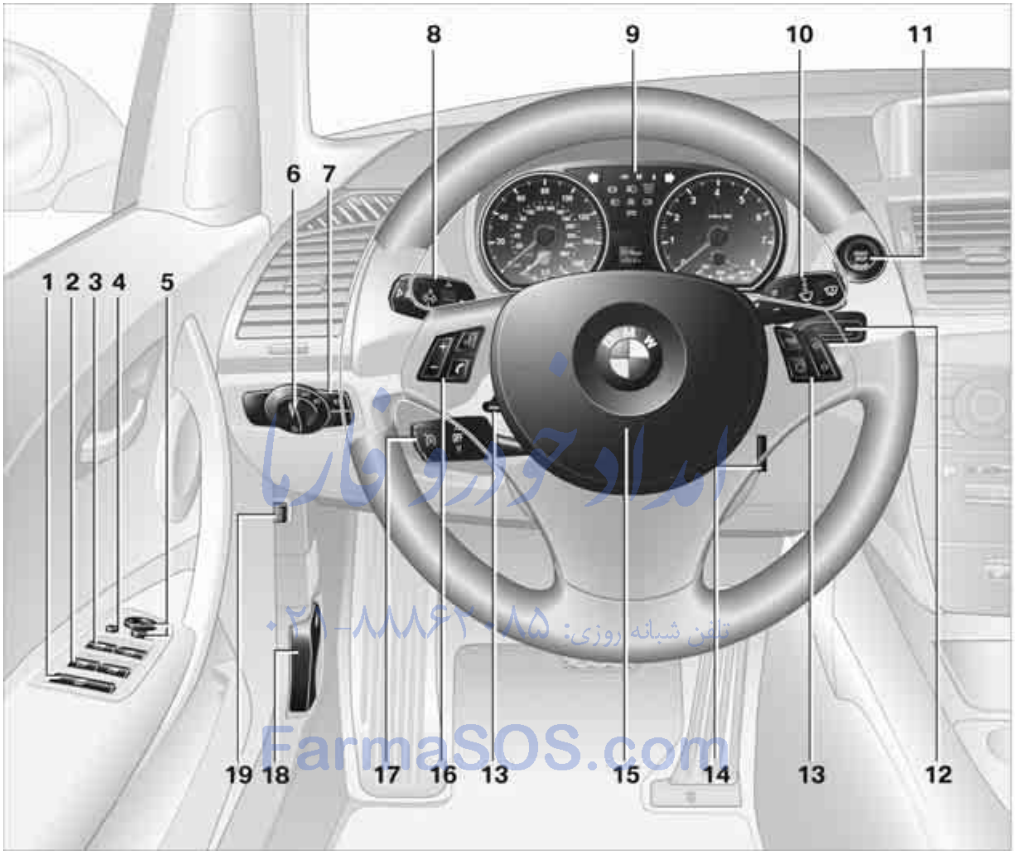
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



امداد خودروفارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

1 Convertible: opening and closing windows jointly 35

2 Convertible: opening and closing rear windows 35

3 Opening and closing front windows 35

4 Folding exterior mirrors in and out* 49

5 Adjusting exterior mirrors, automatic curb monitor* 49

6 Parking lamps 86

Low beams 87

Automatic headlamp control* 86
Adaptive light control* 87
High-beam assistant* 88

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

7 Fog lamps* 89

8 Turn signals 59

High beams, headlamp flasher 88

High-beam assistant* 88

Roadside parking lamps* 88

BC Computer 64

Settings and information about the vehicle 66

9 Instrument cluster 12

10 Windshield wipers 60

Rain sensor* 60

11 START STOP ENGINE Switching the ignition on/off and starting/stopping the engine 55

12 Ignition lock 55

13 Buttons on the steering wheel

Telephone*:
Accepting and ending a call; dialing* the selected phone number; redialing if no phone number is selected

Volume

Activating/deactivating the voice activation system*

Changing the radio station
Interrupting a traffic bulletin

Selecting a music track
Scrolling through the redial list

Next entertainment source

Recirculated-air mode 93

14 Steering wheel heating* 51

15 Horn, entire surface

16 Adjusting the steering wheel 51

17 Cruise control* 61

18 Releasing the hood 198

19 Opening the trunk lid 31

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۷۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Instrument cluster

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

1 Speedometer
135i: with fuel gauge

2 Indicator lamps for turn signals

3 Indicator and warning lamps 13

4 Tachometer 63

5 Fuel gauge 64
135i: engine oil temperature 64

6 Display for
- ▷ Clock 63
- ▷ Outside temperature 63
- ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 71

7 Display for
- ▷ Position of automatic transmission* 57
- ▷ Computer 64
- ▷ Date of next scheduled service, and remaining distance to be driven 67
- ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 63
- ▷ High-beam assistant* 88
- ▷ Checking the oil level 199
- ▷ Settings and information 66

8 Resetting the trip odometer 63

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

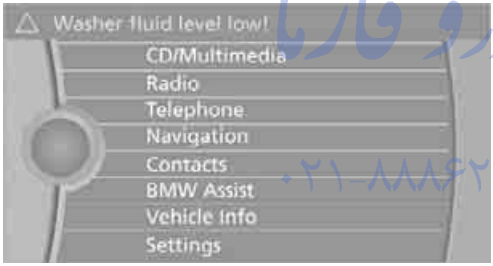
Indicator and warning lamps

The concept

Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

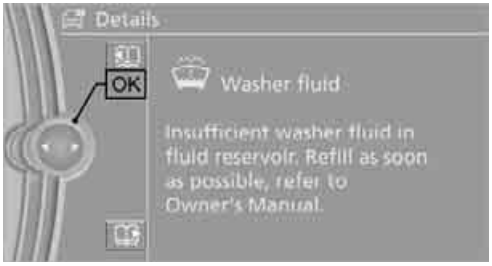
Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Text messages



Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

Supplementary text messages



You can call up more information on the Control Display, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on how to respond, via Check Control, refer to page 71.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Indicator lamps without text messages

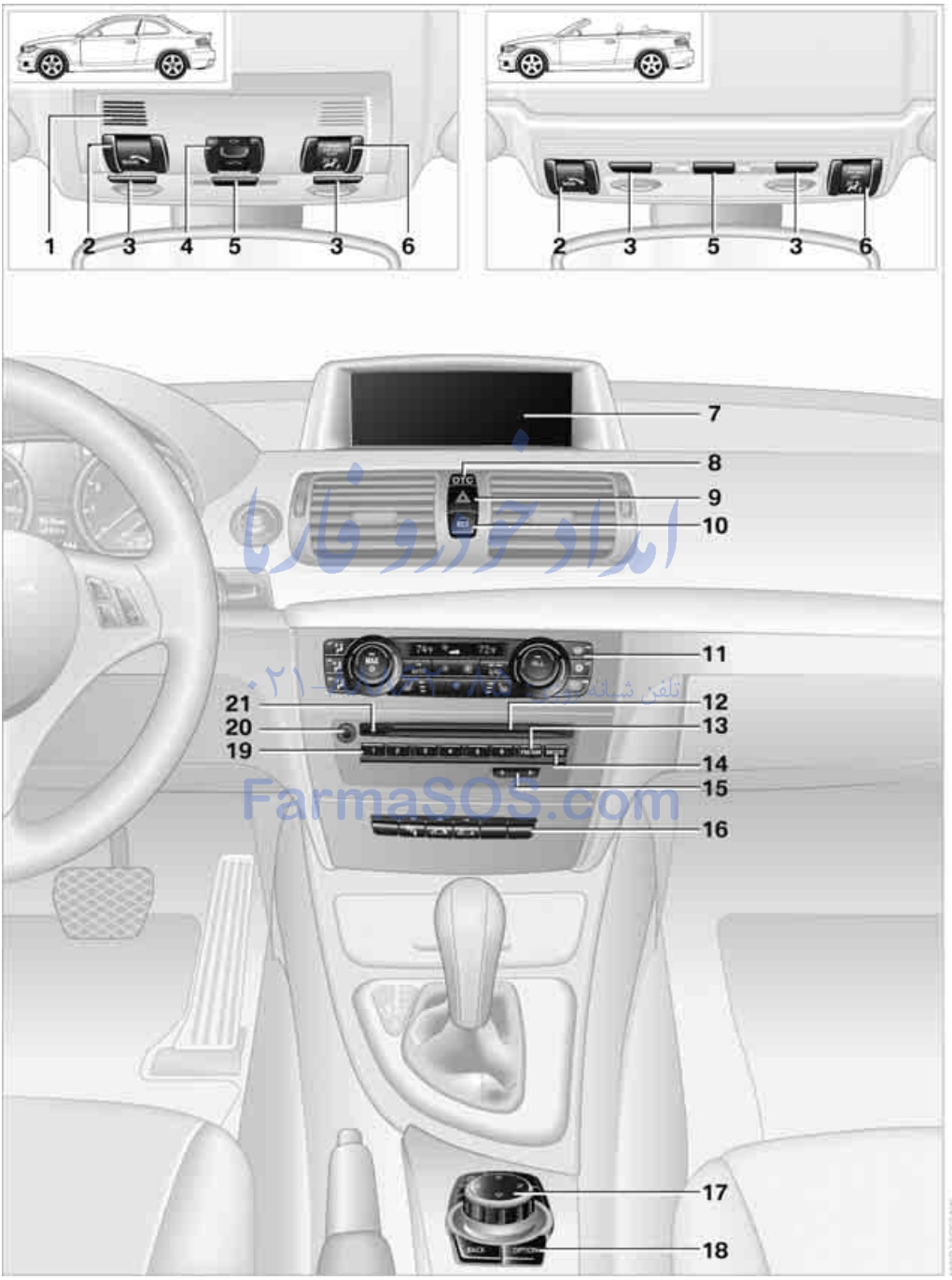
The following indicator lamps notify you that certain functions are active:

- High beams/headlamp flasher 88
- Fog lamps* 89
- Lamp flashes: DSC or DTC is regulating the propulsive forces in order to maintain driving stability 77
- Canada: parking brake applied 57
- BRAKE — Parking brake applied 57
- Canada: engine malfunction with adverse effect on emissions 204
- SERVICE ENGINE SOON — Engine malfunction with adverse effect on emissions 204

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays



FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1 Coupe: microphone for voice activation system* and for telephone in hands-free mode*
Convertible: microphone on steering column

2 SOS: initiating an Emergency Request call* 215

3 Reading lamps* 90

4 Coupe: glass roof, electric* 36

5 Interior lamps 90

6 Passenger airbag status lamp 84

7 Control Display 16

8 Dynamic Traction Control DTC 76

9 Hazard warning flashers

10 Central locking system 30

11 Automatic climate control

Air distribution to the windshield 92

Air distribution to the upper body area 92

Air distribution to the footwell 92

AUTO Automatic air distribution and flow rate 92

Cooling function 93

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC and recirculated-air mode 93

MAX Maximum cooling 92

ALL ALL program 93

Air volume 93

Defrosting windows 93

Rear window defroster 93

Heated seats* 48

12 CD/DVD drive* 136

13 Selecting AM or FM waveband

14 Changing the audio and entertainment sources

15 Changing

- ▷ Radio station 139
- ▷ Track 147

16 Convertible: opening the convertible top 38

Convertible: closing the convertible top 38

17 Controller 16
Can be turned, pressed, or moved in four directions

18 Buttons on the controller 17
Selecting menus directly

19 Programmable memory keys 20

20 Switching entertainment audio sources on/off and adjusting volume 136

21 Ejecting a CD/DVD* 147

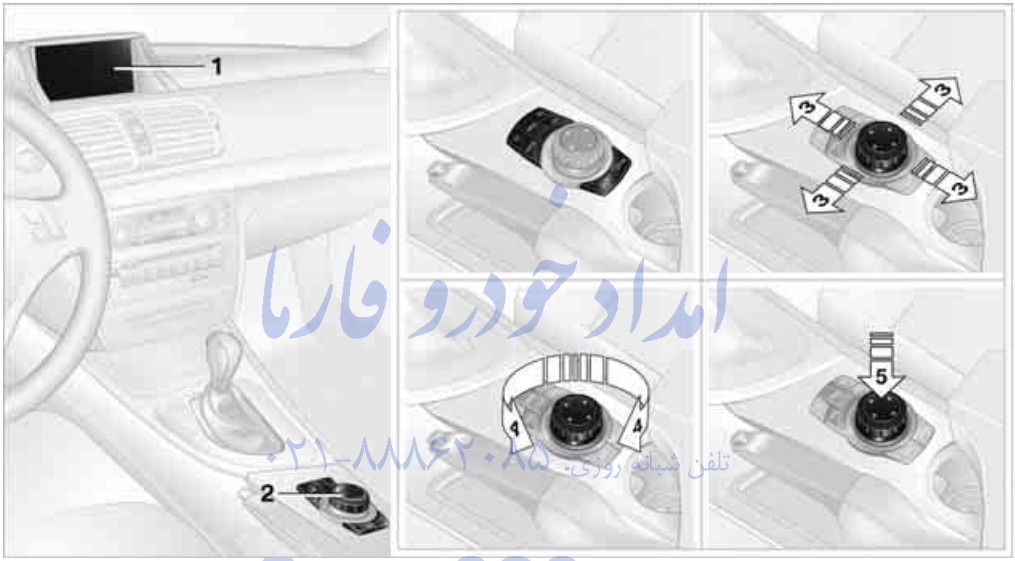
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FamaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive integrates the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a single central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons
You can use the buttons to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select the menu items and create settings.

- ▷ Move in four directions, arrow **3**
- ▷ Turn, arrow **4**
- ▷ Push, arrow **5**

Operate the controller only when traffic and road conditions allow this, to avoid endangering the car's occupants and other road users by being distracted.◀

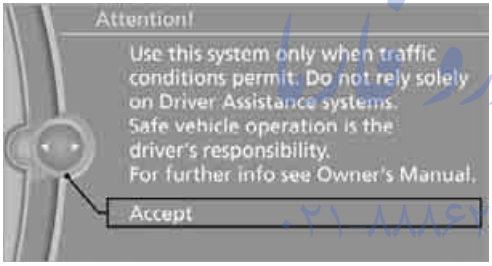
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Buttons on the controller

Button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu
RADIO	Open the Radio menu
CD	Open the CD/Multimedia menu
NAV	Open the Navigation menu
TEL	Open the Telephone menu
BACK	Display the previous menu
OPTION	Open the Options menu

Operating principle

With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, refer to page 55, the following message is displayed on the Control Display:

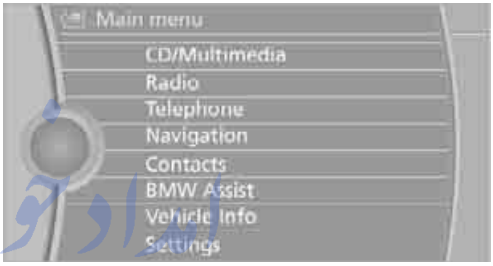


To hide the message:
Press the controller.
The main menu is displayed.

The message is automatically hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Opening the main menu

Press the **MENU** button.
The main menu is displayed.

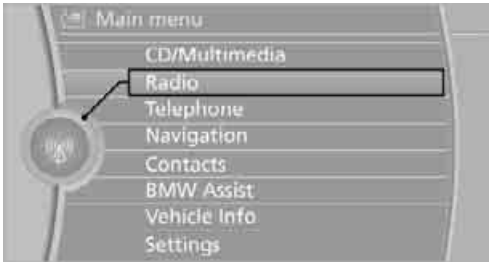


All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting a menu item

The menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

A new menu is displayed or the function is executed.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g. "Settings".

Changing between panels

After selecting a menu item, e.g. "Radio", a new menu is displayed on a panel. The panels can overlap.

Move the controller to the left or right to change between the panels.

White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

Press the **OPTION** button.
The "Options" menu is displayed.

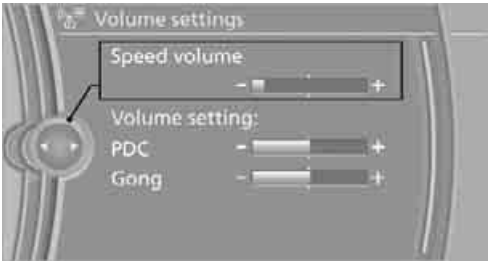
Another possibility: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu appears.

The "Options" menu contains the following:

- Screen settings, refer to page 19.
- Control options for the selected menu.

Adjusting settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller to confirm the setting.

The scroll bar on the right side indicates whether additional menu items or settings can be selected that are currently not visible.◀

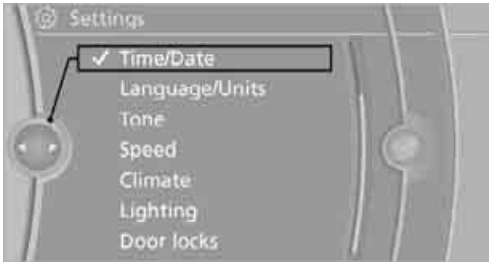
Example: setting the clock

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

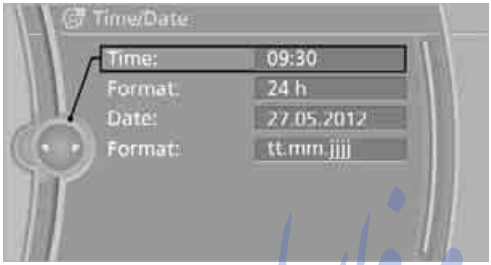
3. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

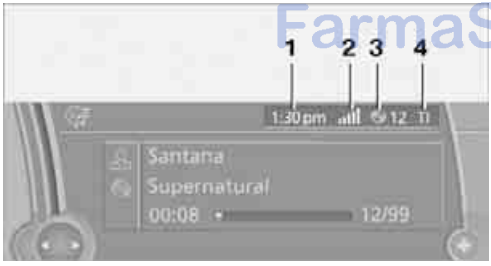


4. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



5. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information



1 Time

2 Display for:

- Reception strength of the wireless network, depends on the mobile phone
- Incoming, outgoing or missed call
- SMS* received

3 Display for:

- Entertainment:
  Radio, CD/DVD, external devices
- Telephone*:
  Name of the mobile phone paired with the vehicle

4 Sound output is switched off or display for traffic bulletins*:

- "TI":
  Traffic bulletins are switched on.
- No display:
  Traffic bulletins are switched off.

Other displays:
Status information is temporarily hidden during Check Control message displays or entries via the voice activation system*.

Switching the Control Display off/on

1. Press the **OPTION** button.
2. "Switch off Control display"

Press the controller to switch on.

Professional navigation system: split screen

Additional information, e.g. from the computer, can be displayed on the right side of the split screen.

On the split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on and off

1. Press the **OPTION** button.
2. "Split screen"

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The split screen is activated.

Selecting the display for the split screen content

When the split screen is switched on, you can select the content displayed on the screen.

1. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen content is selected.
2. Select the display.

Programmable memory keys

Certain iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory keys and called up directly, e.g. radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

Storing functions

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired key for longer than two seconds.

Example for programmable memory keys

Switch the voice instructions for the navigation on/off.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol using the controller.
4. 1 ... 6 Press the desired key for longer than two seconds.

Executing a function

1 ... 6 Press the button.

The function is executed immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying memory key assignments

Touch the button with a finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

Displaying brief information

1 ... 6 Touch the button.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

Displaying detailed information

1 ... 6 Touch the button for an extended period.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Letters and numbers

Entering letters and numbers

1. Turn the controller: select the letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Symbol	Function
|←	Press the controller: delete one letter or number
|←	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers
␣	Enter a blank space

Switching between letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Entering letters
123	Entering numbers

Wordmatch concept during navigation

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

Destination search: the entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ The only letters offered for entering addresses are those for which data are available.
- ▷ Town/city names can be entered with the spelling used in any of the languages available on the Control Display.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵ ۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Voice activation system*

The concept

The voice activation system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. It is not necessary to use the controller.

The voice activation system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice activation system uses a special microphone located in the area of the interior rearview mirror, refer to page 14.

Precondition

Via iDrive, select the language in which the voice activation system is operating, so that the spoken commands can be identified. Selecting the language for iDrive, refer to page 73.

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice activation system.

Saying commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal indicate that the voice activation system is ready to receive spoken commands.

2. Say the command.
The command appears on the Control Display.

This symbol appears on the Control Display when you can enter additional commands.
If no further commands are possible, continue by operating the item of equipment via iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice activation system

Press the button on the steering wheel or

›Cancel‹

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

In dialogs that call for a text of your choice, the procedure can only be canceled using the button on the steering wheel.

Possible commands

The commands available in each case depend on the menu item selected on the Control Display.
To have the available commands read aloud:

›Voice commands‹

For example, if "CD/DVD" is selected, the commands for operating CD/Multimedia are read aloud.

Calling up functions immediately via short commands

With short commands you can run certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected, refer to page 227.

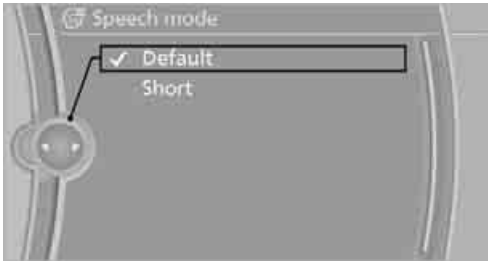
Example: selecting the track of a CD

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. Select the music track, e.g.:
   ›C D track 4‹
   System says:
   ››Track 4‹‹

Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the system should use the standard dialog or a shorter variant. In the shorter variant of the voice dialog, the prompts and responses from the system are abbreviated.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"



4. Select a setting:
   - "Default"
   - "Short"

Notes

To operate the telephone by voice, refer to page 173.◀

For voice commands, bear in mind the following:

- Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.
- Pronounce the commands and digits smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses. This also applies when spelling out and saying a full word during destination entry.
- When selecting a radio station, use the standard pronunciation of the station name.
- For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice activation system and no abbreviations.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass sunroof* or panorama glass sunroof* closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Opening and closing

Remote control

Each remote control contains a rechargeable battery that is automatically recharged when it is in the ignition lock while the car is being driven. Use each remote control at least twice a year for longer road trips in order to maintain the batteries' charge status. In cars with Comfort Access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 34.

The settings called up and implemented when the car is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the car, refer to Personal Profile, next column.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in the remote control, page 203.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to release the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- Driver's door, refer to page 29
- Convertible: glove compartment, refer to page 99

New remote controls

Your BMW center can supply new remote controls with integrated keys as additional units or as replacements in the event of loss.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set many of your BMW's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences. Without any action on your part, Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use. When you unlock the car, the remote control used for the purpose is recognized and the settings stored for it are called up and implemented.

This means that your personal settings will be activated for you, even if in the meantime your car was used by someone else with another remote control and the corresponding settings. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls. They are stored for two remote controls if Comfort Access* is in use.

Personal Profile settings

For more information on specific settings, refer to the specified pages.

- Programming the Programmable memory keys, refer to page 20
- Response of the central locking system when the car is unlocked, refer to page 27
- Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 30
- Automatic call-up* of the driver's seat position, refer to page 48
- Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 60

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

- Settings for the display on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster:
  - 12h/24h format of the clock, refer to page 69
  - Date format, refer to page 71
  - Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 74
  - Language of the Control Display, refer to page 73
  - Units of measure for fuel consumption, distance covered/remaining distances, and temperature, refer to page 67
- Show visual warning for Park Distance Control PDC, refer to page 75
- Light settings:
  - Welcome lamps, refer to page 86
  - Pathway lighting, refer to page 87
  - Daytime running lights, refer to page 87
  - High-beam assistant*, refer to page 88
- Automatic climate control: activating/deactivating AUTO program, cooling function and automatic recirculated-air control, setting temperature, air volume and distribution, refer to page 92 ff
- Entertainment:
  - Tone control, refer to page 136
  - Speed-dependent volume control, refer to page 136

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system functions when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors
- Trunk lid
- Fuel filler flap

Operating from outside

- Via the remote control
- Via the door lock*
- In cars with Comfort Access*, via the handles on the driver's and front passenger doors

In addition, if the remote control is used, the welcome lamps*, interior lamps and the door's courtesy lamps* are switched on or off. The alarm system* is also armed or disarmed.
For further details on the alarm system*, refer to page 32.

Operating from inside

By means of the button for central locking, refer to page 30.

In the event of a sufficiently severe accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: Using the remote control

Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from outside.◀

Convertible: to operate the convertible top with the remote control, the doors and trunk lid must be closed and the cargo area partition must be folded down and engaged on both sides. Refer also to page 40.◀

Unlocking

Press the button.
The interior lamps, the courtesy lamps* and the welcome lamps come on.

Setting unlocking characteristics

You can set whether only the driver's door or the entire vehicle is to be unlocked when the button is pressed for the first time.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"

FarmaSos.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Unlock button"

4. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Press the button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Pressing the button once unlocks the driver's door and fuel filler flap.
     Press the button twice to unlock the entire vehicle.
5. Press the controller.

Coupe: Convenient opening

Hold the button down.
The windows and the glass roof* are opened.

Convertible: Convenient opening*

When you are close to the vehicle, the remote control for Comfort Access can be used to open the convertible top and windows.

Hold the button down.
The windows and the convertible top are opened provided that the doors are closed.

If you continue pressing the button, the windows move up.

Watch during the opening process to ensure that no one is injured. Releasing the button interrupts the opening process.◀

Locking

Press the LOCK button.

Convertible: Convenient closing*

When you are close to the vehicle, the remote control for Comfort Access can be used to close the convertible top and windows.

Hold the LOCK button down.
The convertible top and the windows are closed.

Watch during the closing process to ensure that no one is injured. Releasing the button interrupts the closing process.◀

Switching on interior lamps

While the car is locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Unlocking the trunk lid

Press the button for a longer period.

The trunk lid opens a short distance, regardless of whether it was locked or unlocked.

The trunk lid swings backward and up when opened. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance.
To avoid locking yourself out by accident, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.
A previously locked trunk lid is locked again after closing.
Before and after each trip, check that the trunk lid has not been inadvertently unlocked.◀

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Flash when lock/unlock"

4. Press the controller.

Flashing when locking/unlocking the vehicle is switched on.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Malfunctions

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this occurs, unlock and lock the car at the door lock with the integrated key.

Coupe: in vehicles without an alarm system* or Comfort Access*, only the driver's door can be unlocked and locked using the integrated key in the door lock.

If the car can no longer be locked with a remote control, the battery in the remote control is discharged. Use the remote control on an extended trip to recharge the battery, refer to page 26. The remote control for Comfort Access contains a battery that may have to be changed, refer to page 34.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communications Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

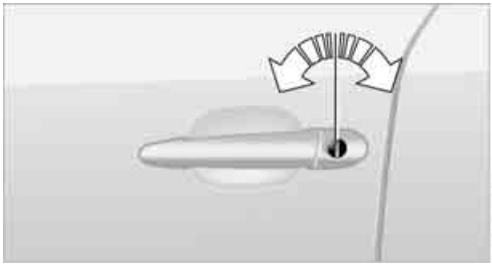
FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Opening and closing: Using the door lock



You can set the way in which the car is unlocked, refer to page 27.

Coupe

In vehicles without an alarm system* or Comfort Access*, only the driver's door can be locked via the door lock.◀

To lock both doors, the fuel filler flap and the trunk lid together:

1. With the doors closed, lock the vehicle using the button for the central locking system in the interior, refer to page 30.
2. Unlock and open the driver's or front passenger door, refer to page 30.
3. Lock the vehicle.
   - Lock the driver's door using the integrated key in the door lock, or
   - press down the lock button of the front passenger door and close the door from the outside.

Convenient operation*

Coupe: if the vehicle is equipped with an alarm system* or Comfort Access*, you can also operate the windows and glass roof* via the door lock.

Convertible: you can operate the windows and convertible top via the door lock.

Hold the key in the position for unlocking or locking.

During each closing procedure, and when opening the convertible top, watch the process and ensure that no one becomes

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

trapped. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can lock and unlock the driver's door by turning the integrated key to the corresponding limit positions in the door lock.

Opening and closing: From inside

This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the trunk lid, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Automatic locking

You can also set the situations in which the car locks:

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"
     The central locking system locks the vehicle after a short time, unless a door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after start. to drive"
     The central locking system locks the vehicle when you drive away.

✓ The function is switched on and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening doors

- ▷ Either unlock the doors together using the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

- ▷ Use the central locking button to lock all of the doors simultaneously, or
- ▷ press down the safety lock button of a door. To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from outside.◀

Trunk lid

In order to avoid damage, make sure there is sufficient clearance before opening the trunk lid.◀

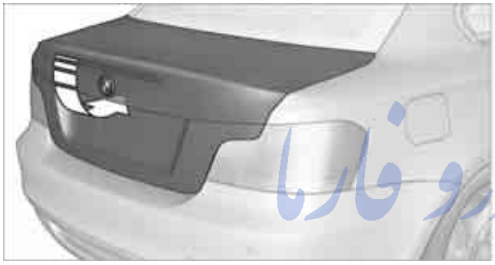
FarmaSOS.com
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Opening from inside

Press the button: the trunk lid opens unless it has been locked.

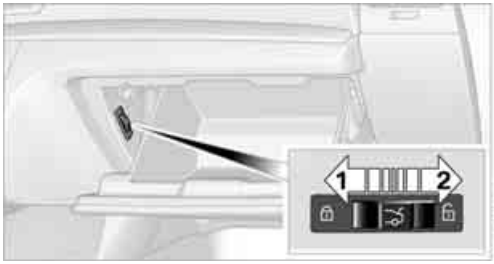
Opening from outside



Press the button, see arrow, or the button on the remote control for a longer period. The trunk lid opens slightly and can be swung upward.

In the event of a malfunction, please contact your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.◀

Locking or unlocking separately



The switch is located in the glove compartment.

1 Locking the trunk lid

2 Unlocking the trunk lid

Locking separately

Push the switch in the direction of arrow **1**.

The trunk lid is locked and cannot be unlocked using the central locking system.

If you give the remote control without the integrated key to someone else while the glove compartment is locked, the trunk lid cannot be opened. This is an advantage when valet parking, for example. Locking the glove compartment, refer to page 99.

Unlocking separately

Push the switch in the direction of arrow **2**.

Emergency release

Pull the lever in the cargo area. The trunk lid is unlocked.

Closing

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the trunk lid make it easier to pull down.

Make sure that the closing path of the trunk lid is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

مداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Alarm system*

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

- When a door, the hood or the trunk lid is opened
- To movements inside the vehicle: interior motion sensor, refer to page 32
- When the car's inclination changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away: tilt alarm sensor, refer to page 32
- When there has been an interruption of power supply from the battery

Depending on the market-specific version, the alarm system briefly signals unauthorized entry attempts by:

- An acoustic alarm
- Switching on* the hazard warning flashers

Arming and disarming

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

You can open the trunk lid using the button of the remote control even if the alarm system is armed, refer to page 28. The lid is locked and monitored again as soon as it is closed.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press the button for at least three seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching off an alarm

- Unlock the car with the remote control, refer to page 27, or
- insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp displays

- The indicator lamp under the inside rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking: doors, hood or trunk lid are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. The interior motion sensor and the tilt alarm sensor are not activated.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- If the indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted in the ignition, but for no longer than approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g. to attempts to steal a wheel or tow the vehicle.

Interior motion sensor

Coupe

In order for the interior motion sensor to function properly, the windows and glass roof must be completely closed*.

Convertible

The interior of the car is monitored up to the height of the seat cushions. Thus the alarm system is activated together with the interior

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

motion sensor even if the convertible top is open. An alarm can be triggered unintentionally by falling objects such as leaves, refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- In duplex garages
- During transport on car-carrying trains, boats/ships or on a trailer
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Comfort Access*

Comfort Access enables you to enter your vehicle without needing to hold the remote control in your hand. All you need to do is wear the remote control close to your body, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle detects the corresponding remote control within the immediate vicinity or in the passenger compartment.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking/locking the vehicle
- Unlocking the trunk lid separately
- Engine starting
- Convenient closing

Functional requirement

- The vehicle or the trunk lid can only be locked when the vehicle detects that the remote control currently in use is outside of the vehicle.
- The vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked again until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started when the vehicle detects that the remote control currently in use is inside the vehicle.

Comparison to the standard remote control

In general, there is no difference between using Comfort Access or pressing the buttons on the remote control to carry out the functions mentioned above. You should therefore first familiarize yourself with the instructions on opening and closing starting on page 26.

Special features regarding the use of Comfort Access are described below.

If you notice a brief delay while opening or closing windows, the glass roof or the convertible top, the system is checking whether a remote control is inside the vehicle. Please repeat the opening or closing procedure, if necessary.◀

Unlocking

Grasp the handle on the driver's or front passenger door completely, arrow **1**. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking

Touch the surface, arrow **2**, with your finger for approx. 1 second. This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

To preserve the battery, please make sure that the ignition and all electrical

FaunaSOS.com
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.◀

Coupe: Convenient closing

For Convenient closing, keep your finger on the surface, arrow **2**.

Convertible: window and convertible top operation

With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, you can open and close the windows and the convertible top when a remote control is located inside the vehicle.

Unlocking the trunk lid separately

Press the button on the outside of the trunk lid. This corresponds to pressing the button.

If the vehicle detects that a remote control has been accidentally left inside the locked vehicle after the trunk lid is closed, the lid will reopen. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal* sounds.◀

Switching on radio readiness

Radio readiness is switched on by pressing the start/stop button, refer to page 55.

Do not depress the brake or the clutch; otherwise, the engine will start immediately.◀

Starting the engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition when a remote control is inside the vehicle. It is not necessary to insert a remote control into the ignition lock, refer to page 55.

Switching off the engine in cars with automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off when the selector lever is in position P, refer to page 56. To switch the engine off when the selector lever is in position N, the remote control must be in the ignition lock.

Malfunctions

Comfort Access may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this happens, open and close the vehicle via the buttons on the remote control or using the integrated key. To start the engine afterward, insert the remote control into the ignition lock.

Warning lamps

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when you attempt to start the engine: the engine cannot be started. The remote control is not inside the vehicle or is malfunctioning. Take the remote control with you inside the vehicle or have it checked. If necessary, insert another remote control into the ignition lock.

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up while the engine is running: the remote control is no longer inside the vehicle. After the engine is switched off, the engine can only be restarted within approx. 10 seconds.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on and a message appears on the Control Display: replace the battery in the remote control.

Replacing the battery

The remote control for Comfort Access contains a battery that will need to be replaced from time to time.

1. Take the integrated key out of the remote control, refer to page 26.

2. Remove the cover.
3. Insert the new battery with the plus side facing up.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Press the cover on to close.

Take the old battery to a battery collection point or to your BMW center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, watch the windows while closing them.
Take the remote control out of the ignition when you leave the car; otherwise, children could operate the electric windows and possibly injure themselves.◀

Coupe: opening, closing

- Press the switch to the resistance point:
  The window opens as long as you press the switch.
- Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
  The window opens automatically. Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Convertible: opening, closing

Window operation with Comfort Access, refer also to page 28.

To close the side windows while driving, either close the rear windows first or all four windows together; otherwise, the windows may not close tightly at high speeds.◀

Individually

- Press the switch to the resistance point:
  The window opens as long as you press the switch.
- Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
  The window opens automatically. Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch. The rear windows cannot be closed automatically.

Jointly

- Press the switch to the resistance point:
  All windows open as long as you press the switch.
- Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
  All windows open automatically. Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.
- Pull the switch:
  All windows close as long as you pull the switch.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

After switching off the ignition

When the remote control is removed or the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the windows for approx. 1 minute as long as no door has been opened.

Convenient operation

For information on Convenient operation via the remote control or the door lock, refer to page 27 or 29. For information on Convenient closing with Comfort Access, refer to Locking on page 33.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a power window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

Despite the pinch protection system check and clear the window's travel path prior to closing it; otherwise, the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.

Do not install any accessories that might interfere with window movement. Otherwise, the pinch protection system could be impaired.

Convertible: the rear windows are not equipped with pinch protection. Therefore, watch them closely when closing to avoid personal injury.◀

Closing without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, or if ice on the windows, etc., prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there. Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch again past the resistance point within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there. The window closes without pinch protection.

Coupe: glass roof*, electric

To prevent injuries, watch the glass roof while closing it.

Take the remote control with you when you leave the car; otherwise, children could operate the roof and possibly injure themselves.◀

Raising

Press the switch.

- The closed glass roof is raised and the sliding visor opens slightly.
- The open glass roof automatically travels into the raised position. The sliding visor remains completely open.

Do not close the sliding visor forcibly with the roof in the raised position, as this would damage the mechanism.◀

Opening, closing

- Press the switch backwards to the resistance point.
  The glass roof and the sliding visor open together as long as you hold the switch in this position.
- Press the switch backwards past the resistance point.
  The glass roof and the sliding visor open automatically. Briefly press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close the glass roof in a similar manner by pressing the switch forwards. The sliding visor remains open and can be closed by hand.

For information on Convenient operation via the remote control or the door lock, refer to page 27 or 29. For information on Convenient closing

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

with Comfort Access, refer to Locking on page 33.

After switching off the ignition

When the remote control is removed or the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the roof for approx. 1 minute as long as no door has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the glass roof encounters an obstruction during closing from approximately the middle of the opening in the roof, or during closing from the raised position, the closing movement is interrupted and the glass roof is opened again slightly.

Despite the pinch protection system check and clear the roof's travel path prior to closing it; otherwise, the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the roof would continue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, press the switch forward past the resistance point and hold it there. The roof closes without pinch protection.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power failure, there is a possibility that the glass roof can only be raised. The system must be initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

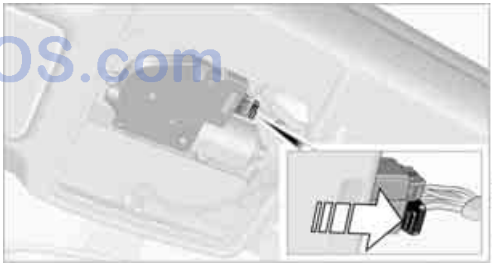
Closing manually*

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the glass roof manually:

1. Unclip the front of the cover of the interior lamps using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 209.

2. On both sides, use the screwdriver to press on the clip inside the opening.

3. Remove the control unit.
4. Unplug the motor. Considerably less effort will be required for manual operation.

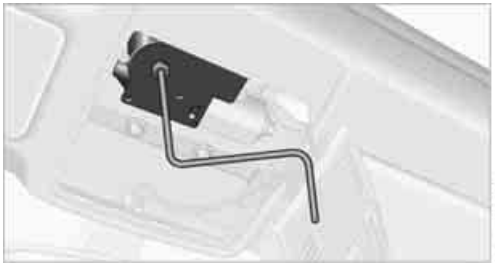


5. Insert the Allen wrench* supplied with the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 209,

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

into the opening provided. Move the glass roof in the desired direction.



6. Reattach the lamp cover and reinstall the control unit.

Convertible: top

The fully automatic top combines reliable weather protection with simple and easy-to-use operation.

The following tips will enhance your driving pleasure in your Convertible:

- It is advisable that you close the convertible top when you park the vehicle. Not only does the closed top protect the vehicle interior against unanticipated weather damage, it also offers a certain amount of theft protection. However, even when the top is closed, valuables should only be stored in the locked cargo area.
- Do not attach roof-mounted luggage systems to the convertible top.
- If the top is opened while it is wet, e.g. after driving in the rain, water may drip into the cargo area. If necessary, remove items from the cargo area beforehand to avoid water stains or soiling.

At temperatures below +14 °F /–10 °C, do not move the convertible top as this could result in damage.

Do not keep the convertible top in the convertible top box for longer than one day if it is wet; otherwise, the moisture may cause damage.

Do not place objects on the convertible top, as otherwise they may fall off when you operate the convertible top and cause damage or injury.

Never move the convertible top when the roll-over protection system is in the activated position.

Always fully complete a convertible top movement. Driving with the convertible top incompletely opened or closed can result in damage or injury.

Do not reach into the mechanism during the opening or closing procedure. Keep children away from the opening/closing path of the convertible top.

For safety reasons, only move the convertible top when the vehicle is stationary, if possible.◀

The convertible top swings upward when opening and closing. When operating the convertible top in a garage, under a bridge, etc., ensure that there are at least 6 ft 7 in/2 m of headroom; otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.◀

Before opening and closing

- Comply with the safety precautions described above.
- Ensure that the cargo area partition is folded down and engaged on both sides, refer to page 102; otherwise, it will not be possible to open the convertible top.
- Ensure that the cargo does not press against the cargo area partition from below.
- Ensure that the trunk lid is closed.

Opening and closing

Convertible top operation with Comfort Access, refer also to page 28.

As of radio readiness, refer to page 55:

If possible, conserve the battery by only operating the convertible top when the engine is running.

Before closing the convertible top, remove all foreign objects from the windshield frame as

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

these could prevent the hardtop from closing properly.◀

1 Push button: close convertible top

2 Push button: open convertible top

3 LEDs

The side windows move down when the convertible top is opened.◀

Operation while driving

You can open or close the convertible top while driving, as long as the car is not moving faster than approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

If you accelerate to over 30 mph/50 km/h while the convertible top is moving, the procedure is interrupted.

When operating the convertible top while driving, pay extra attention to the traffic to avoid an accident. If possible, do not move the convertible top while driving in reverse gear, because your view to the rear is severely limited during the procedure. Do not operate the convertible top while driving in windy conditions. Do not drive faster than 30 mph/50 km/h; otherwise, damage to the vehicle can occur.◀

LEDs

- While the convertible top is being operated, the left LED lights up green. It goes out as soon as the top is fully opened or closed.

In the following situations, a message appears on the Control Display or an acoustic signal sounds in addition to the LED lighting up:

- If the right-hand LED flashes red when you release the button, the opening or closing action has not yet finished.
- If the right-hand LED lights up red when the button is pressed, the cargo area partition is raised, the trunk lid is not closed or there is a malfunction. The convertible top cannot be moved.

Interruption

The automatic sequence of movements is interrupted if the button for the convertible top operation is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction by pushing or pulling the buttons.

If the opening or closing procedure is interrupted for an extended period, the convertible top remains in the raised position for approx. 10 minutes and then slowly moves to a stable position.

A convertible top that is not fully opened or closed is a safety hazard.◀

If the convertible top is not fully opened or closed, the trunk lid cannot be opened and the windows cannot be moved.◀

Convenient operation with remote control or via door lock

Refer to pages 28 and 29.

Closing manually

Only close the convertible top manually if it is absolutely necessary, and never open it manually. The convertible top box cover cannot be locked if there is an electrical defect and would then open while the vehicle is in motion. Incorrect handling can result in damage.◀

Closing the convertible top manually should be performed by two people. The rear seats must not be occupied.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Before closing

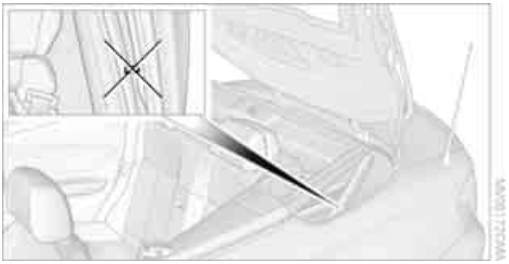
1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Take the screwdriver out of the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 209.

3. If the convertible top is locked, release the two button in the cargo area, arrows **1**, using the screwdriver and pull forcefully all the way out. The convertible top box cover is unlocked.
4. Close the trunk lid. After manually releasing the convertible top box cover, it is no longer possible to open the trunk lid.

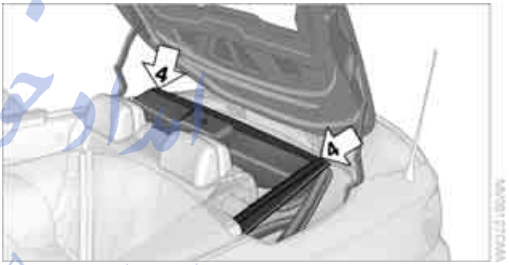
Closing

1. Slide the protective cap, arrow **2**, forward.
2. Slowly and smoothly open the convertible top box cover all the way, arrow **3**.

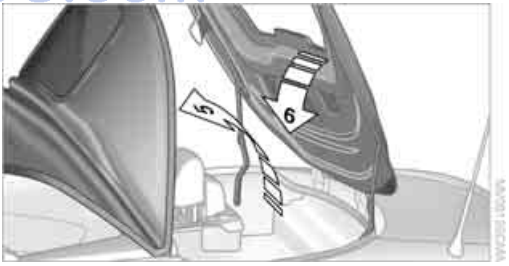
3. The locking pins must have engaged completely. If they are still visible: close the convertible top box cover as far as necessary until the locking bolts engage audibly, then slowly open the cover. During this process, do not close the convertible top box cover completely.



4. Lift out the front part of the convertible top, arrows **4**, on both sides and swing it forward. At the same time keep the convertible top box cover from closing, e.g. using your shoulder.



5. Position the rear convertible top frame upright, arrow **5**, and close the convertible top box cover, arrow **6**. Then lower the rear convertible top frame.



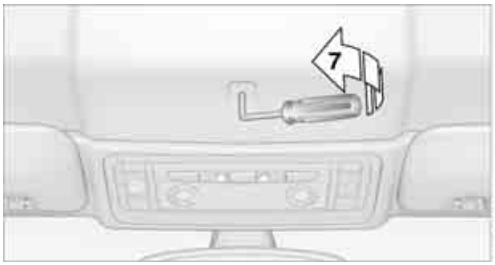
6. Together with another person, press down the front convertible top frame from the outside and on both sides as far as possible.
7. Carefully remove the cover in the center of the front convertible top frame using a pointed object.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Take the Allen wrench out of the onboard literature pouch.

8. Attach the handle of the screwdriver to the Allen wrench and insert the wrench into the opening provided.



9. Turn the Allen wrench all the way to the left, arrow **7**, until the front convertible top frame is locked to the windshield frame. The rear convertible top frame is automatically pressed down onto the convertible top box cover and is sealed tight under tension.

The closing procedure must be fully completed; otherwise, injury or damage may occur.◀

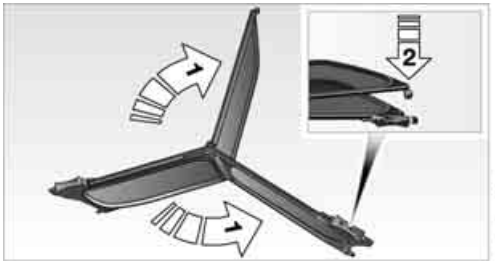
Please contact your BMW center to have the cause of the malfunction eliminated.

Wind deflector*

The wind deflector keeps air currents in the passenger compartment at a low level when the convertible top is down and provides for an even more pleasant journey at higher speeds.

Installation

1. Remove the wind deflector from the protective cover and unfold it, arrows **1**.



2. Press together the top and bottom parts of the wind deflector until the catch engages, arrow **2**.
3. Position both locking pins of one side at the openings provided for them.

4. Press the wind deflector into the openings, arrows **3**, overcoming the tension in the springs, and push the free locking pin in the same direction, arrow **4**.
5. Position the free locking pins at the corresponding openings and let the spring tension lock the wind deflector in place, arrow **5**.

6. Fold up the top section of the wind deflector, arrow **6**.

With the wind deflector installed: do not recline the front-seat backrests too far if the seat is to be slid all the way back, as this would damage the wind deflector.◀

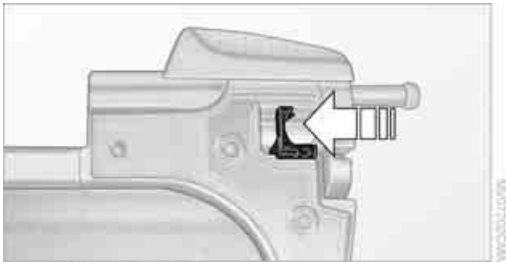
Removing the wind deflector

Proceed in the reverse order as used for installation.

PanaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Folding



Slide the red release lever towards the middle of the wind deflector and push the two halves apart.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Adjustments

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In conjunction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seated position has a major influence on your safety in the event of an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

For additional information on transporting children safely, refer to page 52.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always grip the steering wheel on the rim, with your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injury to the hands or arms in the event of the airbag being triggered off.
No one and nothing should come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e. not resting feet or legs on the dashboard; otherwise, leg injuries can occur if the front airbag deploys.
Make sure that passengers keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not lean against the cover of the head airbag; otherwise, serious injuries can result if the airbag deploys.◀

Even if you follow all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 83.

Head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of neck injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint in such a way that its center is at approx. ear level. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 45.

Safety belt

Before every drive, make sure that all occupants wear their safety belts. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle has four seats, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt in the lap area sits low across the hips and does not press against the abdomen.
The safety belt must not rest against the throat, run across sharp edges, pass over hard or fragile objects or be pinched. Fasten the safety belt so that it sits as snugly as possible against the lap and shoulder without being twisted. Otherwise, the belt could slide over your hips and injure your abdomen in the event of a frontal collision. Avoid wearing bulky clothing and regularly pull the belt in the upper-body area taut; otherwise, its restraining effect could be impaired.◀

Safety belts, refer to page 49.

Seats

Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an

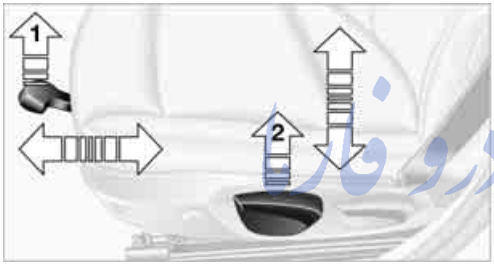
FarmaSOS.com

accident.
On the front passenger seat as well, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven; otherwise, there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Comply with the instructions on head restraint height on page 45, and on damaged safety belts on page 49.

Manual adjustment

Observe the adjustment instructions above to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀



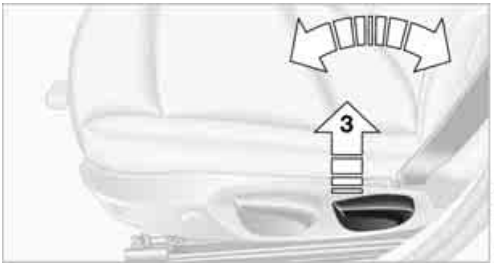
Longitudinal direction

Pull lever **1** and slide the seat to the desired position.
After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

Height

Pull lever **2** and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Backrest

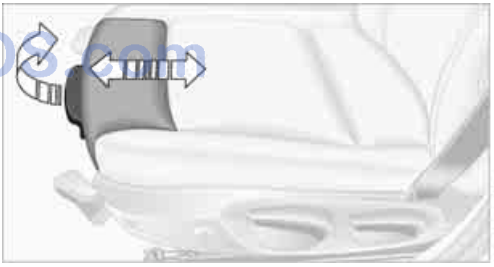


Pull lever **3** and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Tilt*

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Thigh support*

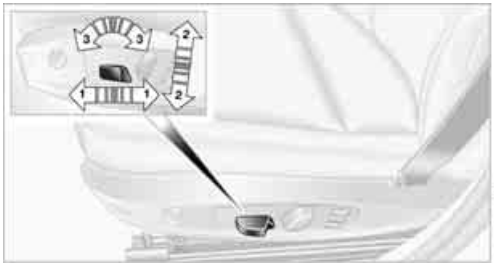


Pull the lever and move the thigh support forward or back.

Electrical adjustment*

Observe the adjustment instructions above to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

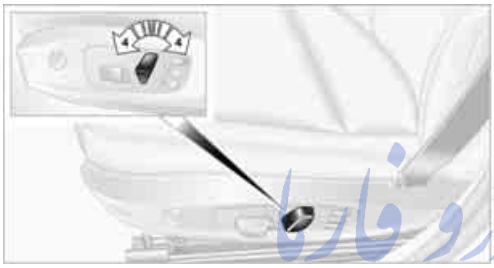
امداد خودرو فارس
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com



1 Longitudinal direction

2 Height

3 Angle



4 Backrest

The head restraints are adjusted manually, refer to Head restraints on page 45.

Lumbar support*

You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

- Increase or decrease curvature: press the switch at the front or rear, respectively.
- Shift curvature up or down: press the switch at the top or bottom, respectively.

Backrest width*

You can change the width of the backrest to suit your individual preferences by adjusting the lateral-support pads.

Press the front or rear end of the switch. Backrest width decreases or increases accordingly.

To move the front seats forward or backward from outside or from one of the rear seats: with the door open, press the front end **1** or rear end **2** of the switch.

Head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of neck injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint in such a way that its center is at approx. ear level. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Only remove a head restraint if no one will be sitting on the seat in question. Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone on that seat. Otherwise,

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

the passenger will be without protection from the head restraint.◀

Height

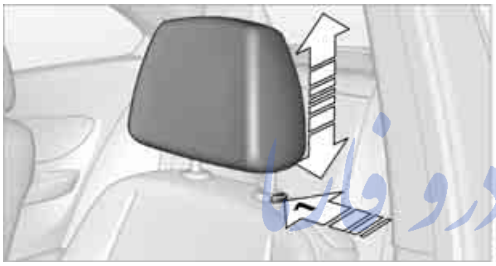
Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Front seats

Height adjustment



- ▷ To raise: pull up.
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down.

Removing

1. Pull it up as far as it will go.
2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head restraint all the way out.

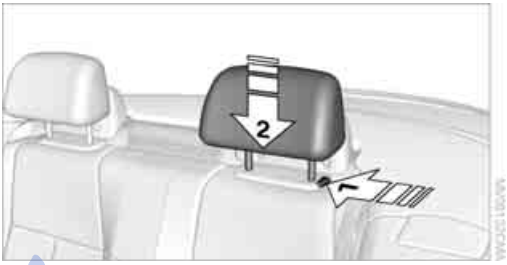
Rear seats

Coupe: height adjustment

- ▷ To raise: pull up.
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down.

Convertible: raising and lowering

Only lower the head restraints if there are no passengers in the rear. Raise all lowered head restraints before transporting passengers in the rear.◀

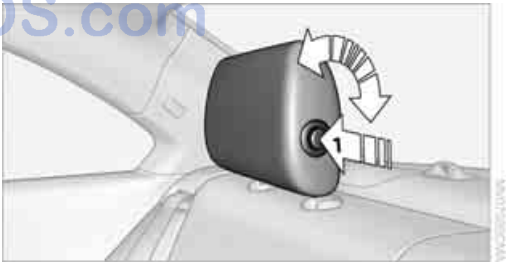


- ▷ To raise: pull up.
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down, arrow **2**.

Removing

1. Pull it up as far as it will go.
2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head restraint all the way out.

Coupe: folding head restraint down and up*



Depending on your vehicle's equipment, it may contain foldable head restraints.

Folding down:
Press the button, arrow **1**.

Folding up:
Pull the head restraint.

Only fold down the head restraints if there are no passengers in the rear. Fold up the

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

head restraints again before transporting passengers in the rear.◀

Seat with manual longitudinal adjustment

Easy entry

The easy entry feature includes a memory function for the longitudinal adjustment and backrest angle.

1. Pull lever **1** and swing the backrest forward.
2. Push the seat forward.

Previous position

Push the seat backward and swing the backrest back.

When pushing the seat into its rearmost position, make sure that no one is injured and that no objects are damaged.
Before driving off, engage both seats and backrests so that they are locked in place. Otherwise, there is a risk an accident due to unexpected movement.◀

Seat with electrical longitudinal adjustment

Easy entry

The easy entry feature includes a memory function for the longitudinal adjustment and backrest angle.

1. Pull lever **1** and swing the backrest forward.
2. Press the front end **2** of the switch until the seat has moved into the desired position.

Previous position

Press the rear end **3** of the switch until the seat automatically stops in its previous position, and fold the backrest back. If you release the switch before the previous seat position is reached, the seat will stop at its current position.

When sliding the seat backward, make sure no one is injured and no objects are damaged.
Before driving off, engage both seats and backrests so that they are locked in place. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident due to unexpected movement.◀

امداد خودرو فارما
Farmasedan.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Heated seats*

Press the button once per temperature level. Three LEDs indicate the highest temperature.

To switch off:
Press button longer.

If you continue driving within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is automatically activated at the previously set temperature.

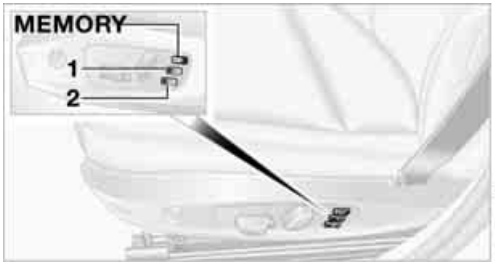
The temperature is lowered or the heating is switched off entirely to save on battery power. The LEDs stay lit.

Seat and mirror memory*

You can store and call up two different combinations of driver's-seat and exterior-mirror positions.

Settings for the backrest width and lumbar support are not stored in memory.

Storing



1. Switch on radio readiness or the ignition, refer to page 55.
2. Adjust the seat and exterior mirrors to the desired positions.
3. Press the M button.
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**: the LED goes out.

Call-up

Do not call up the memory while you are driving; otherwise, unexpected seat movement could result in an accident.◀

Comfort function

1. Unlock and open the driver's door or switch on radio readiness, refer to page 55.
2. Lightly push the desired memory button **1** or **2**.

   The adjusting procedure is halted when you touch a seat adjustment switch or one of the memory buttons.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off, refer to page 55.
2. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2** and keep it pressed until the adjustment process has been completed.

If the M button was pressed accidentally: Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Call-up with the remote control

The driver's seat position last set is stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can select whether or not the seat is reset to that position automatically.

When this Personal Profile function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is free of obstacles. Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects as a result of a rearward movement of the seat.◀

The adjusting procedure is halted when you touch a seat adjustment switch or one of the memory buttons.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting automatic call-up

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Last seat position auto."

The function for automatically calling up the last seat position is switched on and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Switching off automatic call-up

Deactivate "Last seat position automatic".

Safety belts

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 43 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

Before every drive, make sure that all occupants wear their safety belts. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Closing

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

The upper belt anchor is suitable for adults of any stature as long as the seat is adjusted properly, refer to page 43.

Opening

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

"Fasten safety belts" reminder for front seats

The indicator lamps light up and an acoustic signal sounds. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. Check whether the safety belt has been fastened correctly.

The "Fasten safety belts" reminder is issued as long as the driver's safety belt has not been fastened. The "Fasten safety belts" reminder is also issued above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h if the front passenger safety belt has not been fastened, if there are objects on the front passenger seat or if the driver or front passenger unfasten their safety belts.

Damage to safety belts

If the safety belts are damaged or stressed in an accident: have the belt system, including any belt tensioners or child restraint systems, replaced and the belt anchors checked. Have this work done only by your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, it is not guaranteed that the safety devices will function properly.◀

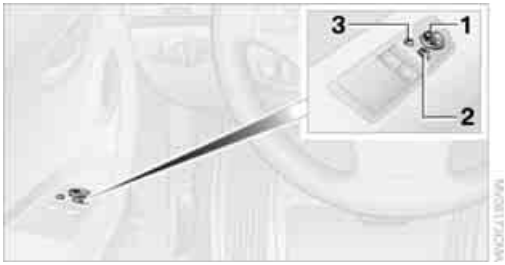
Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

The front passenger's mirror is more convex than the driver's mirror. The objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not gauge your distance from traffic behind you on the basis of what you see in the mirror; otherwise, there is an increased risk of an accident.◀

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSos.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG



1 Adjustments

2 Switching to the other mirror or automatic curb monitor*

3 Folding mirrors in and out*

The setting for the exterior mirrors is stored for the remote control currently in use*. The stored position is called up automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

Manual adjustment

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually: press the edge of the glass.

Folding mirrors in and out*

At driving speeds up to approx. 12 mph/ 20 km/h, you can fold the mirrors in and out by pressing button **3**. This can be beneficial in narrow streets, for example, or for moving mirrors that were folded in by hand back out into their correct positions. Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

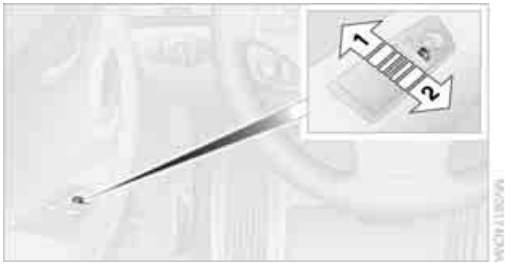
Automatic heating

Depending on the outside temperature, both exterior mirrors are heated automatically when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Passenger-side mirror tilt function – automatic curb monitor*

Activating

1. Push the switch to the position for the driver's side mirror, arrow **1**.

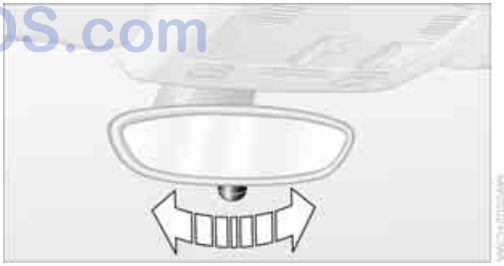


2. Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R.
   The glass of the mirror on the passenger side tilts slightly down. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle, e.g. a curb, when backing into a parking space.

Deactivating

Push the switch to the position for the passenger-side mirror, arrow **2**.

Interior rearview mirror

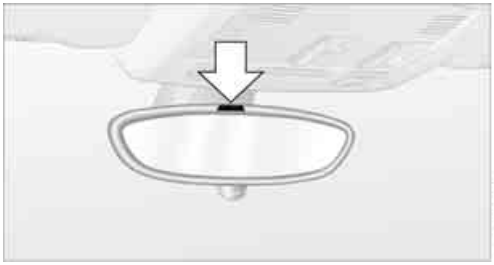


Turn the knob to reduce glare from the headlamps of cars behind you when driving at night.

PamasOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*



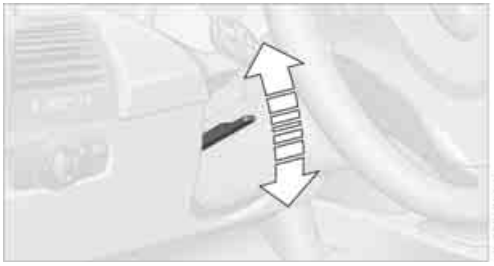
The automatic dimming feature of the interior and exterior mirrors* is controlled by two photo cells in the interior rearview mirror. One photo cell is in the mirror frame, see arrow; the other is on the back of the mirror.

In order to ensure that the system functions correctly, keep the photo cells clean, do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and windshield, and do not affix adhesive labels or stickers of any kind to the windshield directly in front of the mirror.

Steering wheel

Adjustments

Do not adjust the steering wheel position while the car is in motion; otherwise, there is a risk of an accident due to unexpected movement.◀



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Swing the lever back up.

Do not use force to swing the lever back up; otherwise, the mechanism will be damaged.◀

Steering wheel heating*

Press the button.

The LED in the button lights up when the steering wheel heating is switched on.

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and/or other persons by opening the doors, for example.◀

Children always in the rear

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children under the age of 13 or smaller than 5 ft/150 cm may be transported only in the rear in suitable child restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and size. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must be buckled in with a safety belt as soon as there no longer is any child restraint system that is appropriate for their age, size and weight.

Exception for front passenger seat

Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags for the front passenger must be deactivated. Otherwise, a child traveling on that seat will face a significant risk of injury if the airbags are triggered off, even with a child restraint system.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags refer to page 83.

Installing child restraint systems

Observe the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using child restraint systems. Otherwise, the protective effect may be diminished. ◀

Standard child restraint systems are designed to be secured with a lap belt or with the lap-belt section of a lap-and-shoulder belt. Incorrectly or improperly installed child restraint systems can increase the risk of injury to children. Always follow the installation instructions for the system with the greatest care.

On the front passenger seat

After installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags for the front passenger are deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags deploy.◀

Seat position

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back and up as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt. Do not change the seat position after this.

Backrest width*

The backrest width of the front passenger seat must be at its widest possible setting. Do not change the setting after installing the child seat. Otherwise, the child seat's stability on the front passenger seat is limited.◀

1. Adjust the backrest width to its widest setting, refer to page 45.
2. Install the child seat.

Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be prevented from being pulled out in order to fasten child restraint systems.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

To lock the safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull the belt strap all the way out.
3. Allow the belt strap to retract and pull it taut against the child restraint system.

The safety belt is locked.

To unlock the safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the safety belt strap to retract all the way.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren.

To install and use the LATCH child restraint system, follow the operating and safety instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system; otherwise, the protective function of the seat may be compromised.◀

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

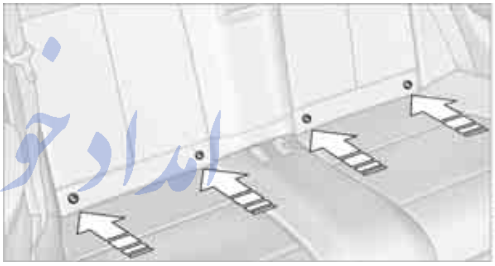
Before installing the child seat, pull the belt out of the area for the child restraint fixing system.

Ensure that both lower LATCH anchors are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system is resting firmly against the backrest; otherwise, the protective function of the seat may be compromised.◀

Coupe: rear seats

The anchor points for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the labeled protective caps.

Convertible: rear seats



The anchor points for the lower LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows, in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Upper LATCH retaining strap

Convertible

For Canadian Customers Only.

The following statement is required by Transport Canada.

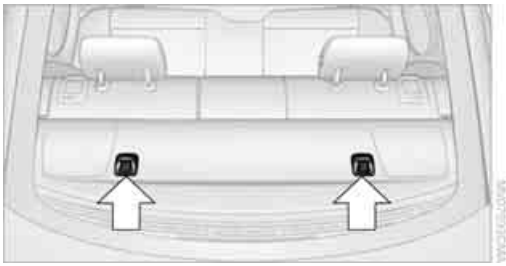
This vehicle is not equipped with user-ready tether anchorages. As such neither a child restraint system, nor a booster cushion, requiring the use of a tether strap can be properly secured in the vehicle.

Coupe

Use the top tether anchors to secure child restraint systems only; otherwise, the anchors could be damaged.◀

امداد خودرو فارسا
FarsiaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

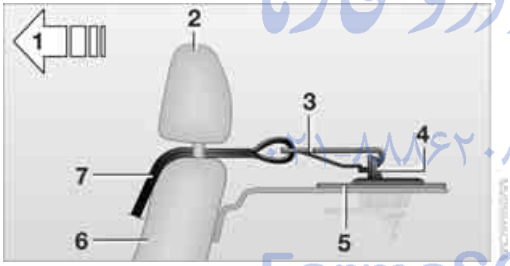


For child restraint systems with tether straps there are two additional anchors, see arrows.

Placement of the tether strap

Coupe

Make sure the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes to the top anchor. Otherwise, the strap will not properly secure the child restraint system in the event of an accident.◀



1 Direction of travel

2 Head restraint

3 Hook for upper retaining strap

4 Anchor

5 Rear window shelf

6 Seat backrest

7 Upper retaining strap of child restraint system

If necessary, fold the head restraints upward before use.

1. Push the head restraint upward.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint holders.
3. Use the hook to clip the retaining strap to the anchor.
4. Push the head restraint into its lowermost position.
5. Pull the retaining strap taut.

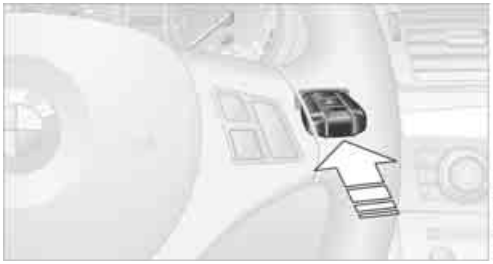
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵ ۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Driving

Ignition lock

Insert the remote control into the ignition lock



Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

▷ Radio readiness is switched on. Individual electrical consumers can operate.

Comfort Access*

If the car is equipped with Comfort Access, only insert the remote control into the ignition lock under special circumstances, refer to page 33.

Removing the remote control from the ignition lock

Do not forcibly pull the remote control out of the ignition lock as this may cause damage.◀

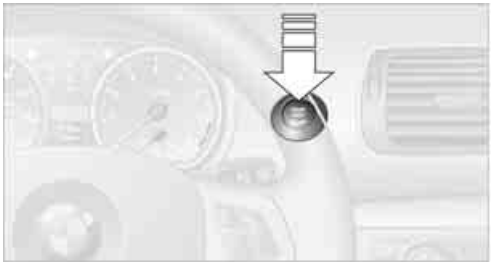
Before removing the remote control, push it all the way in to release the locking mechanism.

▷ The ignition is switched off if it was on.

Automatic transmission

You cannot take out the remote control unless the selector lever is in the P position: interlock.

Start/stop button



Pressing the start/stop button switches radio readiness or the ignition on or off.

The engine is started when you press the start/stop button and depress the clutch if the car has manual transmission, or the brake if the car has automatic transmission.◀

Radio readiness

Individual electrical consumers can operate. The time and the outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is switched off automatically:

▷ When the remote control is removed from the ignition lock

▷ In cars with Comfort Access*, by touching the surface above the door lock, refer to Locking on page 33

Ignition on

All electrical consumers can operate. The odometer and trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster.

When the engine is off, please switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electrical consumers in order to preserve the battery.◀

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps as well as displays in the instrument cluster go out.

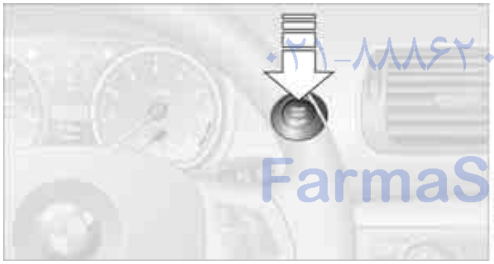
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Starting the engine

Do not run the engine in enclosed areas; otherwise, the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running; otherwise, such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard. Before leaving the car with the engine running, place the transmission in neutral or move the selector lever to position P and forcefully apply the parking brake to prevent the car from moving.◀

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession as well as repeated start attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or incompletely burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀



Manual transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with Comfort Access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 33.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Depress the clutch and shift to neutral position.
3. Press the start/stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Automatic transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with Comfort Access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 33.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Move the selector lever to position P.
3. Press the start/stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Switching off the engine

Always take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle.

When parking, apply the parking brake forcefully; otherwise, the vehicle could begin to roll.◀

Manual transmission

1. With the car at a standstill, press the start/stop button.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Forcefully apply the parking brake.
4. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 55.

Automatic transmission

1. With the car at a standstill, move the selector lever to position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
3. Forcefully apply the parking brake.
4. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 55.

Before driving into a car wash

The vehicle is able to roll when you perform the following steps:

1. Insert the remote control, even with Comfort Access, into the ignition lock.
2. Depress the brake.
3. Move the selector lever to position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Parking brake

The parking brake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Indicator lamp

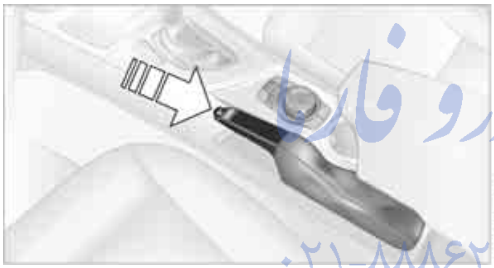
The indicator lamp is lit, and when you drive off a signal sounds in addition. The parking brake is still applied.

Indicator lamp for Canadian models.

Applying

The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing



Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

In exceptional cases, if the parking brake has to be used to slow or stop the car, do not pull the lever up too hard. In doing so, continuously press the button of the parking brake lever.
Otherwise, excessive force on the parking brake can lock up the rear wheels and cause the rear of the car to swerve.◀

To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally apply the parking brake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the parking brake is applied.◀

Manual transmission

When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged if you inadvertently shift into 3rd or 4th gear.◀

Reverse gear

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. When the gearshift lever is pressed to the left, a slight resistance has to be overcome.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic*

In addition to fully automatic operation, you can also manually shift with the Steptronic, refer to page 58.

Vehicle parking

To prevent the vehicle from rolling, always select position P and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle with the engine running.◀

Disengaging the remote control

In order to remove the remote control from the ignition lock, you must first move the selector lever to position P and switch off the engine: interlock. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 55.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + –

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Displays in the instrument cluster

P R N D DS M1 to M6

The selector lever position is displayed, or the current gear in the manual mode.

Changing selector lever positions

- With the ignition switched on or the engine running, the selector lever can be moved out of position P.
- Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, first depress the brake; otherwise, the selector lever will refuse to move: shiftlock.

  To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, depress the brake until you are ready to start.◀

A lock prevents you from inadvertently engaging selector lever positions R and P. To cancel the lock, press the button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

P Park

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are locked.

R Reverse

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

You can select this in a car wash, for example. The vehicle can roll.

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are selected automatically.

Under normal operating conditions, fuel consumption is lowest when you are driving in position D.

Kickdown

Kickdown enables you to achieve maximum performance.
Press the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle resistance point.

Sport program and manual operation M/S

Move selector lever from position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot:
The sport program is activated and DS is displayed on the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

To deactivate the sport program or manual mode M/S, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Shifting gears via the selector lever

Move selector lever from position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot:
When you press the selector lever forwards or backwards, the manual mode is activated and

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Steptronic changes gear. M1 through M6 are displayed on the instrument cluster.

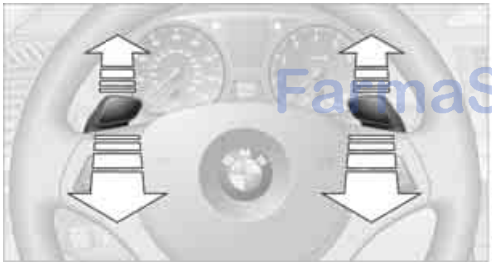
Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system. The gear selected is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the gear actually in use.

Shifting gears via shift paddles* on the steering wheel

The shift paddles allow you to shift gears quickly since both hands can remain on the steering wheel.

- When you use the shift paddles on the steering wheel to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode.
- If you do not accelerate or shift gears using the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

If the selector lever is in the M/S gear plane, manual mode remains active.◀



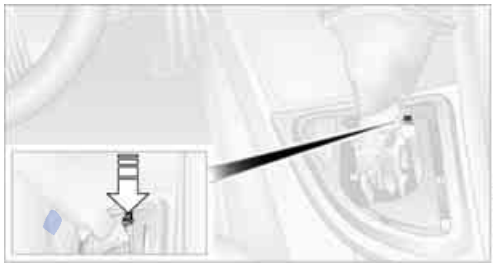
- To shift up: pull one of the shift paddles.
- To shift down: press one of the shift paddles.

Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system. The gear selected is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the gear actually in use.

Overriding selector lever lock

Should the selector lever refuse to move out of position P even though the ignition is switched on, the brake is depressed and the button on the selector lever is pressed, the selector lever lock can be overridden:

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve up over the selector lever until the sleeve is inside out.



3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 209, press the red lever, see arrow, while moving the selector lever to the desired position.

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher

1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

FaemaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp and the turn signals indicates that one of the turn signal bulbs has failed.◀

Indicating a turn briefly

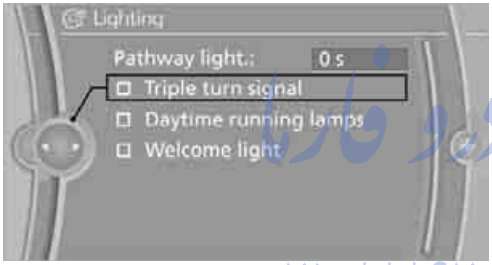
Press the lever as far as the resistance point for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever as far as the resistance point. The turn signals flash three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"



Triple turn signal activation is activated and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system

1 Switching on wipers

2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe

3 Activating/deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor*

4 Cleaning windshield and headlamps*

5 Setting speed for intermittent wipe, or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Switching on wipers

Press the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.
The system switches to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

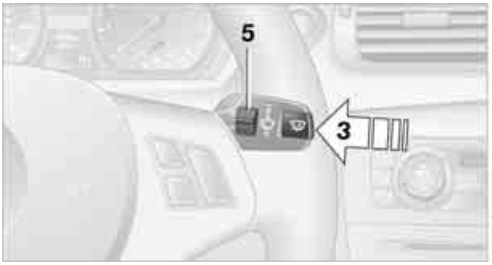
Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system switches to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Intermittent wipe or rain sensor*

If the car is not equipped with a rain sensor, the intermittent-wipe time is a preset.

If the car is equipped with a rain sensor, the time between wipes is controlled automatically and depends on the intensity of the rainfall. The rain sensor is mounted on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating intermittent wipe or rain sensor



Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Setting speed for intermittent wipe or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the thumb wheel **5**.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**.
The LED goes out.

Deactivate the rain sensor before entering an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Cleaning windshield and headlamps*

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.
Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wipers are operated for a short time.

When the vehicle lighting system is switched on, the headlamps are cleaned at regular and appropriate intervals.

Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do, your vision could be obscured. Antifreeze should therefore be added to the fluid, refer to Washer fluid.
Do not use the washers when the washer fluid reservoir is empty; otherwise, you will damage the washer pump.◀

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are heated automatically* while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Washer fluid

Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from ignition sources and only store it in the closed original container that is kept out of reach of children; otherwise, there is a risk of personal injury. Comply with the instructions on the container.◀

Washer fluid filler neck

Only refill washer fluid when the engine is cool to avoid contact with hot engine parts. Otherwise, fluid spills constitute a fire hazard and a risk to personal safety.◀

All washer nozzles are supplied with washer fluid by the same reservoir.

Fill with water and, if required, with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the water and antifreeze before filling the washer fluid reservoir to make sure the correct concentration is maintained.◀

Capacity

Approx. 6.3 US quarts/6 liters.

Cruise control*

The concept

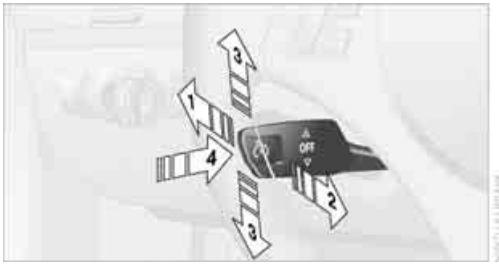
You can use the cruise control feature beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. The car then stores and maintains the speed that you specify using the lever on the steering column.

Do not use cruise control when driving at constant speed is prevented by adverse conditions, e.g. winding roads, dense traffic or poor road conditions due to, e.g. snow, rain, ice or loose surfaces. Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident as a result.◀

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

One lever for all functions



1 Storing and maintaining speed or accelerating

2 Storing and maintaining speed or decelerating

3 Deactivating cruise control

4 Resuming a speed stored beforehand

Maintaining current speed

Tap the lever, arrow **1**, or pull it briefly, arrow **2**. The car's current speed is stored and maintained. It is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster.

If the engine braking power is insufficient on a downhill slope, the set speed may be exceeded. On uphill gradients, it may prove impossible to maintain the set speed if engine power output is insufficient.

Increasing speed

Repeatedly press the lever, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached.
Each time the lever is pressed lightly, the speed is increased by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.

Accelerating using the lever

Press the lever, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached.
The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system stores and maintains the speed.

Decreasing speed

Repeatedly pull the lever, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is reached.
The functions are the same as when the set speed is increased or the vehicle is accelerated, except that in this case the speed decreases.

Deactivating cruise control

Tap the lever upwards or downwards, arrow **3**.

In addition, the system is automatically deactivated:

- When you brake the vehicle
- When you depress the clutch of a manual transmission or shift to neutral
- When you select the automatic transmission's neutral position N
- When the vehicle travels faster or slower than the set speed for an extended period, e.g. when the accelerator is depressed
- When you activate DTC or deactivate DSC
- When DSC is intervening

Resuming a speed stored beforehand

Press the button, arrow **4**.
The last stored speed is resumed and maintained.

The stored speed is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster.
The stored speed is cleared when the ignition is switched off.

Display in the instrument cluster

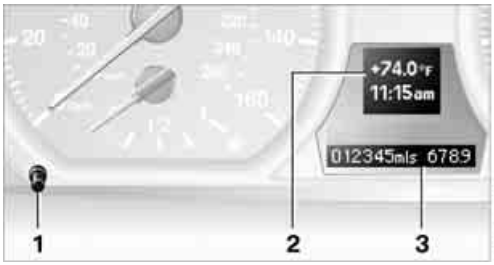
When the speed at which the vehicle is traveling is stored or when a stored speed is called up, the speed is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Controls overview

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock



1 Knob in the instrument cluster
2 Outside temperature and clock
3 Odometer and trip odometer

Knob in the instrument cluster

▷ To reset the trip odometer while the ignition is switched on

▷ To display the time, outside temperature and odometer briefly while the ignition is switched off

Units of measure

To select the respective units of measure, miles or km for the odometer as well as °F or °C for the outside temperature, refer to Units of measure on page 67.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Time, outside temperature display

Setting the time, refer to page 69.

Outside temperature warning

When the displayed temperature sinks to approx. +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. There is an increased risk of black ice.

⚠ Black ice can also form at temperatures above +37 °F /+3 °C. You should therefore drive carefully on bridges and shaded roads, for example; otherwise, there is an increased risk of an accident.◀

Odometer and trip odometer

Resetting the trip odometer:
With the ignition switched on, press button **1** in the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is parked

If you still want to view the time, outside temperature and odometer reading briefly after the remote control has been taken out of the ignition lock:
Press button **1** in the instrument cluster.

Tachometer

Never force the engine speed up into the red warning field, see arrow. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن ثابت روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Coolant temperature

A warning lamp will come on if the coolant, and therefore the engine, becomes too hot.
In addition, a message will appear on the Control Display.

Check coolant level, refer to page 202.

Engine oil temperature*

When the engine is at normal operating temperature, the engine oil temperature is between approx. 210 °F /100 °C and approx. 300 °F / 150 °C.

If the engine oil temperature is too high, a message appears on the Control Display.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 14 US gallons/ 53 liters.

You can find information on refueling on page 188.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Fuel display 135i: in speedometer.

Reserve

Once the fuel level has fallen to the reserve zone, a message briefly appears on the Control Display and the cruising range for the remaining amount of fuel is displayed on the computer. Under a cruising range of approx. 30 miles/ 50 km, the message remains in the Control Display.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Computer

Displays in the instrument cluster

Calling up information

Press the button in the turn indicator lever.

The following items of information are displayed in the order listed:

- Cruising range
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption
- Current fuel consumption
- No information

امداد خودرو ایران
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

To set the corresponding units of measure, refer to Setting the units of measure on page 67.

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is calculated on the basis of the way the car has been driven over the last 18 miles/30 km and the amount of fuel currently in the tank.

It is important that you refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

With the trip computer, refer to page 66, you can have the average speed for another trip displayed.

To reset average speed: press the button in the turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

With the trip computer, refer to page 66, you can have the average consumption for another trip displayed.

To reset average fuel consumption: press the button in the turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

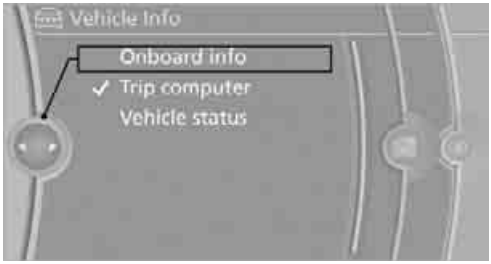
Current fuel consumption

Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

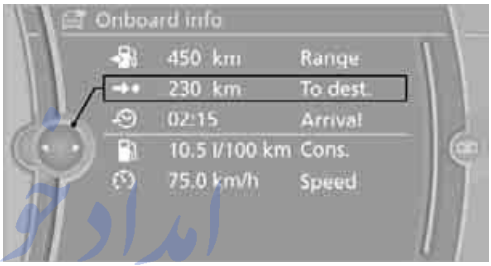
Displays on the Control Display

The computer can also be opened via iDrive.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"



Displays on the "Onboard info":



- Cruising range
- Distance from destination
- Estimated time of arrival if:
  - A distance was manually entered in the computer, refer to the information below.
  - A destination was entered in the navigation system*, refer to page 117.

Displays on the "Trip computer":

- Departure time
- Trip duration
- Trip distance

Both displays show:

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

- The average speed and
- the average fuel consumption.

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

You can reset the values for average speed and average consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. Press the controller again to confirm your selection.

Resetting the trip computer

You can reset all values:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset"

Settings and information

Operating principle

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

1 Button for:
- Selecting display
- Setting values

2 Button for:
- Confirming selected display or set values
- Calling up computer information 64

3 When the lights are on: instrument lighting brightness 89

4 Calling up Check Control 71

5 Checking oil level 199

6 Setting the time 69

7 Setting the date 70

8 Viewing service requirement display 67

Exiting displays

The outside temperature reading and the time reappear when you press button **2** or if you make no entries within approx. 15 seconds. If required, complete the current setting first.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

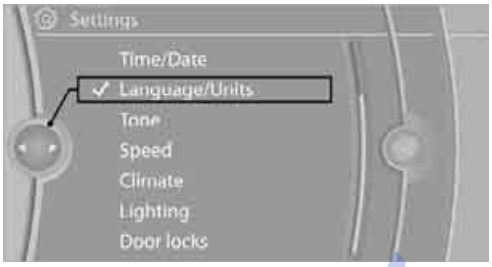
Units of measure

The units of measure can be set.

Setting the units of measure

You can change the units for fuel consumption, route/distance, temperature and pressure.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"



3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 55.
2. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "SERVICE-INFO".
3. Press button **2**.
4. Use button **1** to scroll through the individual service items.

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date of the next scheduled service are displayed briefly immediately after you start the engine or switch on the ignition.

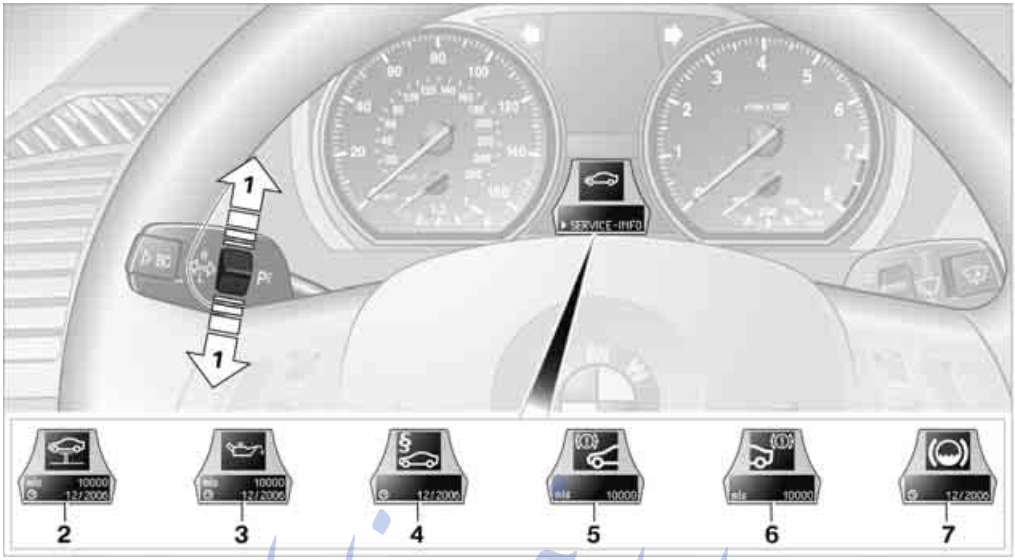
The extent of service work required can be read out from the remote control by your BMW Service Advisor.◀

For certain maintenance operations, you can view the respective distance remaining or due date individually in the instrument cluster.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Possible displays



1 Button for selecting functions
2 Service requirements
3 Engine oil
4 Roadworthiness test*
5 Front brake pads
6 Rear brake pads
7 Brake fluid

The sequence of displayed service items may vary. The data for the next service appointment is shown first.

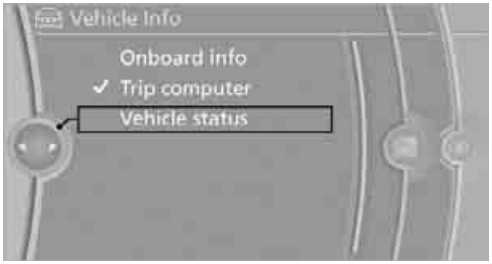
امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی:
FarmaSOS.com

More information

Detailed information on service requirements

You can call up additional information on the maintenance regimen on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

You can request more detailed information on every entry:

Select the entry and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

Symbols

OK No service is currently required.

The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please schedule a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

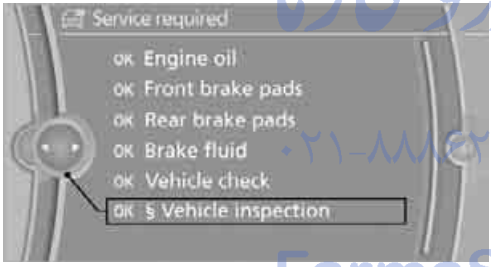
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is always set correctly, refer to page 70; otherwise, the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not ensured.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

4. "§ Vehicle inspection"



5. Open the menu for entering the deadline.
6. "Date:"
7. Create the settings.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting.
   The year is highlighted.
9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
10. Press the controller to apply the setting.
    The date entry is stored.

To exit from the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

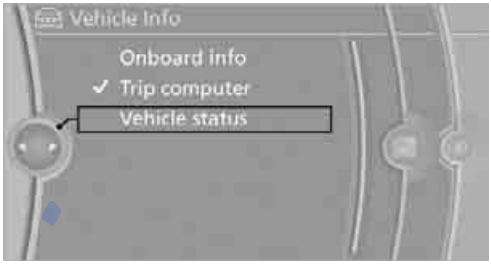
More information on the BMW Maintenance System can be found on page 203.

Automatic Service Request*

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your BMW center prior to a service due date.

You can check when your BMW center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Options"
4. "Last Service Request"

Clock

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 26.

Setting the time

In the instrument cluster

To set the 12h/24h format, refer to Setting the time format on page 70.

1. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate

FarmaSOS.com

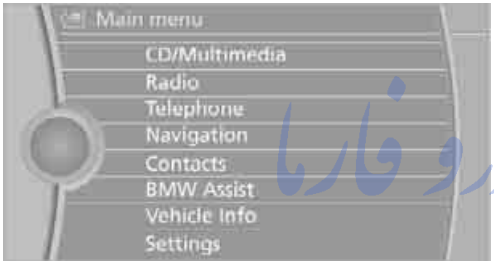
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the time and the word "SET".

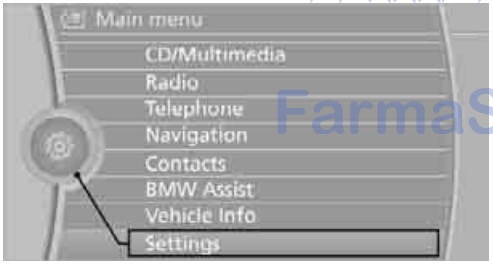
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the hours.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Use button **1** to set the minutes.
6. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
7. Press button **2**.
   The system accepts the new time.

Via iDrive

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   The main menu is displayed.

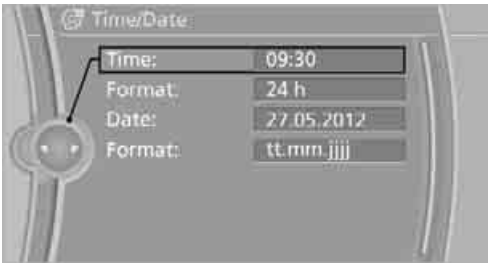


2. "Settings"



Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"



3. "Time:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed, and then press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The time format is stored.

ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Date

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 26.

Setting the date

In the instrument cluster

To set the dd/mm or mm/dd date format, refer to Setting the date format below.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the date and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the day of the month.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Set the month and the year in the same way.
6. Press button **2**.
The system stores the new date.

Via iDrive

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed, and press the controller.
5. Create the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"

4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any malfunctions in the systems monitored. Such a Check Control message includes indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster and, in some circumstances, an acoustic signal as well as text messages at the top of the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps

Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

⚠ indicates that Check Control messages have been stored. These Check Control messages can be viewed again later, refer to page 72.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

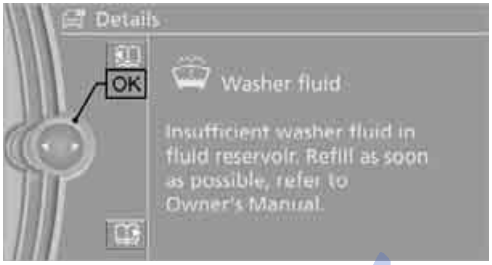
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Text messages

Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

Supplementary text messages

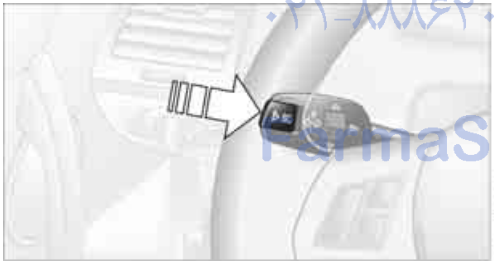
You can call up more information on the Control Display, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on how to respond, via Check Control.



The text of urgent messages is displayed automatically.

To exit the display:
Select "OK" and press the controller.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

- Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and remain visible until the malfunction has been rectified. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.
  These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this, they are displayed again automatically.

  They are marked with the symbol shown here.

- Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

  They are marked with the symbol shown here.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "CHECK".
2. Press button **2**.
   "CHECK OK" appears if there are no Check Control messages. If a Check Control message has been stored, the corresponding lamp comes on. It is accompanied by a text message on the Control Display.
3. Push button **1** to check for other messages.
4. Press button **2**.
   The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Via iDrive

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Check Control"

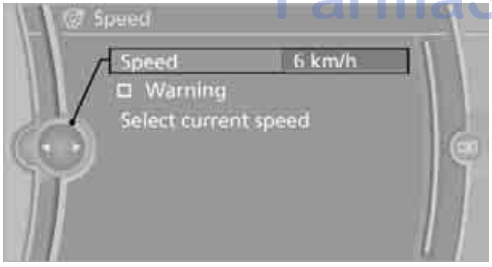
4. Select the text message.

Speed limit

You can enter a speed, and a Check Control message will indicate when you reach this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"

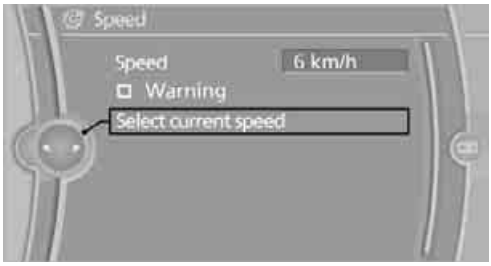


4. Turn the controller until the desired speed is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The speed limit is stored.

Applying your current speed as the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"



4. Press the controller.

The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating/deactivating the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"

4. Press the controller.

The limit warning is switched on.

Settings on the Control Display

Language on the Control Display

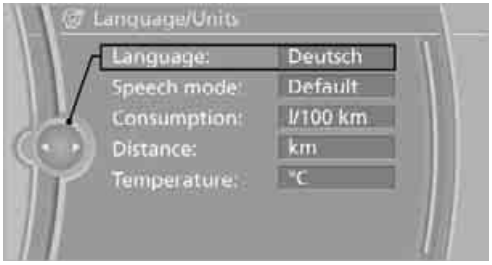
Setting the language

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"

FarmaSOS.com
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Language:"



4. Select the desired language.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the voice dialog

Switch between a standard dialog and a short dialog.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the desired dialog.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of the Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"

4. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use. In bright conditions, for example, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Park Distance Control PDC*

The concept

The PDC assists you with maneuvering in tight parking spaces. Acoustic signals and a visual indicator warn you of the presence of an object behind your vehicle. Four ultrasonic sensors in the bumper measure the distance.

These sensors have a range of approx. 6.5 ft/ 2 m. However, an acoustic warning does not sound until an object is approx. 2 ft/60 cm from the corner sensors, or approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the center sensors.

PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed; otherwise, physical circumstances may lead to the system warning being issued too late.◀

Switching on automatically

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the system is activated after approx. 1 second when you engage reverse gear or move the automatic transmission selector lever to position R. Wait this short period before driving.

Switching off automatically

After approx. 55 yd/50 m of driving or above approx. 20 mph/30 km/h, the system switches off and the LED goes out.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, its position is indicated correspondingly by an interval tone. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An interval tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- If you stop in front of an object that has been detected by only one of the corner sensors
- If you are driving parallel to a wall

Malfunction

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on. PDC is malfunctioning. A message appears on the Control Display. Have the system checked.

To avoid this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. When using a high-pressure cleaner, do not spray the sensors for extended periods of time and only from a distance of at least 1 ft/30 cm.

PDC with visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are displayed on the Control Display before a signal tone sounds. The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limitations

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with trailer towbars and hitches, thin or wedge-shaped objects, etc. Low objects that have already been displayed, e.g. curbs, can disappear again from the detection area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. Loud sound sources outside or inside the car can drown out the PDC signal. Therefore, always drive cautiously; otherwise, there is a risk of personal injury or property damage.◀

FarmaSoft.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW has a number of systems that help to maintain the vehicle's stability even in adverse driving conditions.

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. Braking safely, refer to page 110.

Electronic brake-force distribution EBV

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

Dynamic Brake Control DBC

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake for the duration of the full braking application.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

DSC prevents the driving wheels from losing traction when you pull away from rest or accelerate. The system also recognizes unstable driving conditions, for example if the rear of the car is about to swerve or if momentum is acting at an angle past the front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions at the individual wheels.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin again by taking risks, as this could result in an accident.◀

Deactivating DSC

Press the button for at least 3 seconds; the indicator lamps for DSC in the instrument cluster light up. Dynamic Traction Control DTC and DSC have been simultaneously deactivated. Stabilizing and drive-output promoting actions are no longer executed.

In the same way as with a differential interlock*, even if DSC is deactivated, brake actions are still performed on the rear axle to enhance drive output if the drive wheels experience a significant loss of traction.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button again; the indicator lamps for DSC in the instrument cluster go out.

For better control

If the indicator lamp flashes:
DSC is regulating the drive and braking forces.

If the indicator lamps are on:
DSC is deactivated.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC

DTC is a version of DSC in which the drive output is optimized for particular road conditions, e.g. unplowed snow-covered roads. The system assures the maximal drive output, but with reduced driving stability. It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

- When driving uphill on snow-covered roads, in slush or on unplowed, snow-covered roads
- When rocking a stuck vehicle free or starting off in deep snow or on loose ground
- When driving with snow chains

Activating DTC

Press the button; the indicator lamps for DTC in the instrument cluster come on.

For better control

If the indicator lamp flashes:
DTC is regulating the drive and braking forces.

DTC

If the indicator lamps are on:
DTC has been activated.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the DTC indicator lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

Drive-off assistant

The drive-off assistant enables you to drive off smoothly on uphill gradients. It is not necessary to use the parking brake for this.

1. Hold the car in place by depressing the brake.
2. Release the brake and drive off without delay.

The drive-off assistant holds the car in place for approx. 2 seconds after the brake is released. Drive off without delay after releasing the brake. Otherwise, the drive-off assistant will no longer hold the car in place after approx. 2 seconds and the car will start to roll backwards.◀

Flat Tire Monitor FTM*

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor detects pressure loss in a tire by comparing the rotating speeds of the individual tires while moving.

In the event of pressure loss, the rolling circumference changes and, thus, the rotating speed of the affected wheel. This change is detected and is reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be initialized for the correct tire inflation pressure.

The system must be reinitialized each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed.◀

System limitations

The Flat Tire Monitor is unable to warn the driver of sudden, severe tire damage caused by external factors, nor can it identify the gradual loss of pressure that will inevitably occur in all four tires over a lengthy period of time.◀

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- System has not been initialized
- Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- Performance-oriented style of driving: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- Snow chains are attached

Initializing the system

The initialization is completed during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically.
Do not initialize the system while snow chains are attached.◀

FarmaSoft.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"

4. Start the engine – do not drive away.
5. Start the initialization using "Reset".
6. Start driving.

The initialization is completed during the trip. "Status: Flat Tire Monitor active" is displayed again on the Control Display.

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds. There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure.

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If the car is not equipped with run-flat tires, refer to page 196, the standard equipment by design, do not continue driving. A severe accident could result if you continue driving after a tire puncture.◀
2. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.

   If all four tires are inflated to the correct pressures, the Flat Tire Monitor might not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.◀
3. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the distance for which you can continue driving on the basis of the following guidelines:

   ▷ With a light load:
   1 to 2 persons without luggage:
   approx. 155 miles/250 km

   ▷ With a medium load:
   2 persons, cargo area full, or 4 persons without luggage:
   approx. 90 miles/150 km

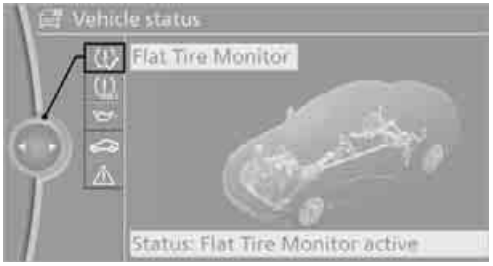
   ▷ With a full load:
   4 persons, cargo area full:
   approx. 30 miles/50 km

Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h; otherwise, there is a risk of an accident. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibration or loud noises occur during the journey, this may be an indication that the damaged tire has finally failed. Reduce your speed and pull over as soon as possible at a suitable location. Otherwise, parts of the tire could come loose, resulting in an accident. Do not continue driving. Instead, contact your BMW center.◀

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g. whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"



The status is displayed.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM*

The concept

RDC monitors the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires during a trip. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be reset while all tire inflation pressures are correct.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics. Otherwise, the system may malfunction.

▷ Each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed, reset the system.◀

System limitations

⚠ TPM cannot warn you in advance of sudden severe tire damage caused by outside influences.◀

The system does not work correctly if it has not been reset; for example, a flat tire may be indicated even though the tire inflation pressures are correct.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire if a wheel without TPM electronics, such as a compact spare wheel, has been mounted, or if TPM is temporarily malfunctioning due to other systems or devices using the same radio frequency.

Status indicator on the Control Display

The color of the wheels represents the status of the tires and the system.

TPM takes into account that tire pressures change while the vehicle is being driven. The tire pressures do not need to be corrected unless the TPM instructs you to do so by means of color indicators.

Green

The tire inflation pressure corresponds to the established target value.

"TPM active" appears on the Control Display.

One wheel yellow

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels yellow

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a puncture.

Possible reasons for this:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary malfunction caused by systems or devices using the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

Resetting the system

▷ Each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed, reset the system.◀

Resetting finishes during the trip, which can be interrupted at any time. When the trip is resumed, the reset is continued automatically. Do not reset the system when driving with a compact wheel*.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset TPM"

4. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
5. "Reset"
6. "Yes"

FarmaSOS.com

Start driving.
The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving a few minutes, the set inflation pressures in the tires are accepted as the target values to be monitored. The system reset is completed during your drive, and can be interrupted at any time. When the trip is resumed, the reset is continued automatically. On the Control Display, the wheels are shown in green and "Status: TPM active" is displayed again.

If a flat tire is detected while the system is resetting and determining the inflation pressures, all wheels on the Control Display are displayed in yellow. The message "Low tire!" is shown.◀

Message for low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds. There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure.

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If the car is not equipped with run-flat tires, refer to page 196, the standard equipment by design, do not continue driving. Otherwise, a severe accident could result after a tire puncture if you continue driving.◀
2. In the event of complete pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guidelines:
   - With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo area full, or 4 persons without luggage:
     approx. 95 miles/150 km
   - With a full load:
     4 persons, cargo area full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibration or loud noises occur during the journey, this may be an indication that the damaged tire has finally failed. Reduce your speed and pull over as soon as possible at a suitable location. Otherwise, parts of the tire could come loose, resulting in an accident. Do not continue driving. Instead, contact your BMW center.◀

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor - TPM"

The status is displayed.

Malfunction

The small warning lamp flashes in yellow and then lights up continuously; the large warning lamp comes on in yellow. On the Control Display, the wheels are shown in gray and a message appears. No punctures can be detected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

This type of message is shown in the following situations:

- If there is a malfunction
  Have the system checked
- If a wheel without TPM electronics has been mounted
- If TPM is temporarily malfunctioning due to other systems or devices using the same radio frequency

Message for unsuccessful system reset

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. The system is not reset, e.g. after a wheel change.

Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system, refer to page 79.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138
Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level at which the TPMS low tire pressure telltale illuminates.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously lit. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Active steering*

The concept

Active steering varies the turning angle of the front wheels in relation to steering wheel movements. It also varies the steering force required to turn the wheels depending on the speed at which you are driving.

When you are driving in the low road speed range, e.g. in a town or when parking, the steering angle is increased, i.e. steering becomes very direct and less effort is required to turn the wheels. In the higher speed range, on the other hand, the steering angle is reduced as the speed increases. This improves the handling of your BMW over the entire speed range.

In critical situations, the system can make targeted corrections to the steering angle provided by the driver and thus stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes. This stabilizing intervention is simultaneously deactivated when DSC is switched off, refer to page 76.

ایراد خودرو فارسی
FarsiSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Malfunction

The warning lamps come on. Active steering is malfunctioning or is temporarily deactivated. At low speeds, greater steering wheel movements are required, whereas at higher speeds the vehicle reacts more sensitively to steering wheel movements. The stability-enhancing feature may also be deactivated. Drive cautiously and think well ahead.

Deactivation

Active steering is deactivated to perform an initialization. A message indicates that the feature is deactivated. Initialization may take several minutes.

If the message does not disappear during the current trip, have the system checked.

Defect

If there is a defect, a corresponding text message appears. Have the system checked.

Servotronic*

The concept

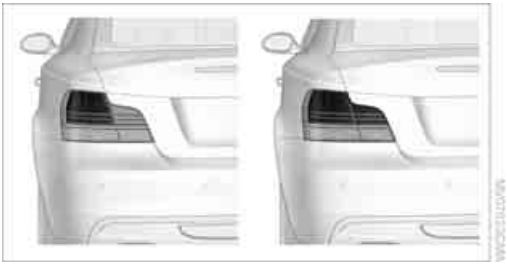
The Servotronic varies the steering force required to turn the wheels relative to the vehicle speed.
At low speeds, the steering force is strongly assisted, i.e. less force is needed for steering. As the vehicle speed increases, the steering assisting power is reduced.

This system functions automatically.

Malfunctions

Malfunctions are displayed via Check Control, refer to page 71.

Brake Force Display*

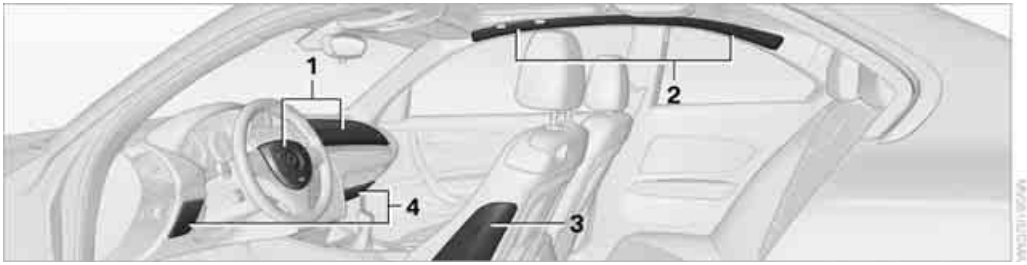


On the left: normal braking.
On the right: sharp braking.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Airbags



The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Coupe: head airbags

3 Side airbags in the seat backrests

4 Convertible: knee airbags

Protective action

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 43 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head.

The airbags have been designed to not be triggered in every collision situation, e.g. not in minor accidents or rear-end collisions.

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way.
Keep the dashboard and window on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover with adhesive labels or coverings, and do not attach holders such as for navigation instruments and mobile phones.
Do not attach seat covers, cushions or other objects not specifically approved for seats with integral side airbags to the front seats. Do not hang items of clothing such as coats or jackets over the backrests. Do not attach to the airbag retention system from the vehicle. Do not modify the individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This includes the upholstered covers on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seats and roof posts, as well as the sides of the roof lining. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel.
Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of malfunctions, deactivation or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to repair procedures of BMW with correspondingly trained personnel and that has the required explosives licenses. Unprofessional attempts to work on the system could lead to failure in an emergency or to undesired airbag activation, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warning notices and information about the airbags can also be found on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

An analysis of the impression in the front passenger seat cushion determines whether and how the seat is occupied. The front and side airbags for the front passenger are activated or deactivated by the system accordingly.

The indicator lamp above the interior rearview mirror shows the current status of the front passenger airbags, deactivated or activated, refer to Status of front passenger airbags below.◀

BarmaS03.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, read the safety precautions and handling instructions under Transporting children safely, refer to page 52.
The front and side airbags can also be deactivated by adolescents and adults sitting in certain positions; the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags comes on. In such cases, the passenger should change his or her sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired airbag status cannot be achieved by changing the sitting position, transport the relevant passenger on a rear seat. Do not attach seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not place any items under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise, a correct analysis of the seat cushion is not ensured.◀

Status of front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags shows the functional status of the front passenger front and side airbags in accordance with whether and how the front passenger seat is occupied. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

- The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a specially designated child restraint system is detected, as intended, on the seat. The front and side airbags for the front passenger are not activated.

  Most child seats are detected by the system, especially child seats required by the NHTSA at the time of vehicle production. After mounting a child seat, ensure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbag is lit. It indicates that the child seat has been detected and that the front passenger airbags are deactivated.◀
- The indicator lamp does not come on when, for example, a person of sufficient size and in a correct sitting position is detected on the seat.
  The front and side airbags for the front passenger are activated.
- The indicator lamp does not come on if the seat is empty.
  The front and side airbags for the front passenger are not activated.

Operational readiness of airbag system

As of radio readiness, refer to page 55, the warning lamp comes on briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Airbag system malfunction

- Warning lamp does not light up at radio readiness or beyond.
- Warning lamp remains permanently on.

In the event of a fault in the airbag system, have it checked without delay; otherwise, there is the risk that the system will not function as intended even if a sufficiently severe accident occurs.◀

Convertible: rollover protection system

The rollover protection system is activated automatically in the event of an accident, a crit-

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۷۷۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

ical driving situation, an extreme tilt in the car's longitudinal axis or upon loss of ground contact. The protection bars behind the rear head restraints deploy within fractions of a second.

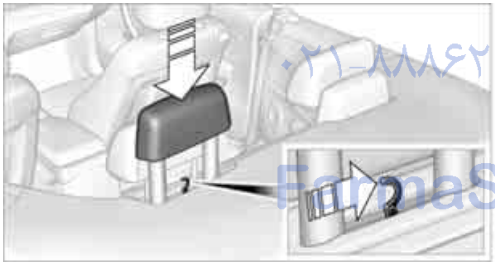
As a supplementary system to the reinforced windshield frame, the rollover protection system ensures that the necessary headroom is maintained for all vehicle occupants.

Always keep the area of movement of the rollover protection system clear.
In minor accidents, you are protected by the fastened safety belt and, depending on accident severity, by the safety belt tensioner and multi-phase airbag retention system.◀

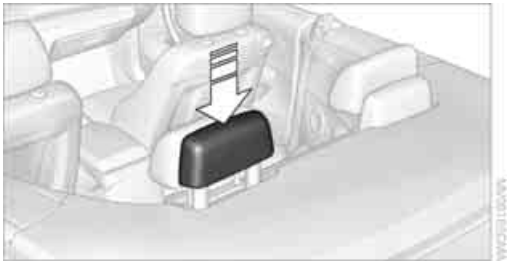
Resetting

If the rollover protection system was not impacted after being automatically activated, it can be reset by lowering the protection bars to their original positions. This does not require tools.

1. Push the locking lever to one side and hold it there.



2. Push the protection bar halfway down from above.
3. Release the locking lever.
4. Push the protection bar down until it snaps into place.



5. Repeat the procedure for the other protection bar.

Have the rollover protection system checked after an unexpected activation.

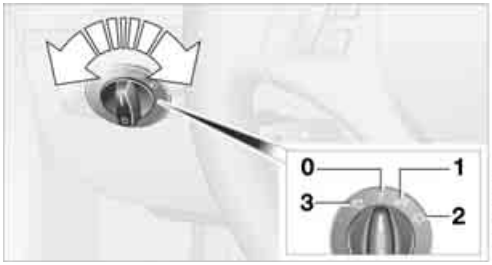
Never move the convertible top when the rollover protection system is in the activated position.
Do not make any modifications to the individual components of the rollover protection system or its cabling.
Work on the rollover protection system should only be performed by a BMW center.
Incorrectly performed work on the system may lead to system failure or incorrect operation.
To check the system and ensure flawless long-term operation, always observe the service intervals, refer to page 67.◀

FarnaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lamps off,
daytime running lights

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lights

2 Low beams,
welcome lamps*

3 Automatic headlamp control*, daytime running lights, welcome lamps*, high-beam assistant*, adaptive light control*

When you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off if the light switch is in position **0**, **2** or **3**.

Switch on the parking lamps if necessary, switch position **1**.

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

The parking lamps will discharge the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time; otherwise, the battery might not have enough power to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the left-hand or right-hand roadside parking lamps, refer to page 88.◀

Low-beam headlamps

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control*

When the switch is in position **3**, the low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on ambient light conditions, e.g. in a tunnel, in twilight, or if there is precipitation. The adaptive light control* is active. The LED next to the symbol is illuminated when the low beams are on. You can also activate the daytime running lights, refer to page 87. In the situations described above, the lamps then automatically switch from daytime running lights to low beams.

The headlamps may also come on when the sun is sitting low on a blue sky.

The low beams remain switched on independent of the ambient lighting conditions when you switch on the fog lamps*.◀

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the system cannot detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low-beam headlamps manually under these conditions.◀

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when you park the car, the parking lamps and the interior lamps light up briefly when you unlock the vehicle.

Activating/deactivating welcome lamps

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Welcome light"

Welcome lamps are activated and are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Pathway lighting

If you activate the headlamp flasher after switching off the ignition with the lamps switched off, the low beams come on and remain on for a certain time.

Setting the duration or deactivating

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway light.:"
4. Set a time of duration, or 0 s to deactivate the function.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lights

The daytime running lights light up in switch position **0**, **1** and **3**. They are less powerful than the low beams.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lights

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

Daytime running lights are activated and are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive light control*

The concept

Adaptive light control is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

In tight curves at speeds up to 40 mph/70 km/h, e.g. on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, corner-illuminating lamp is switched on that lights up the inside area of the curve.

Activating adaptive light control

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 86.

The corner-illuminating lamp is switched on automatically, depending on the steering wheel angle or turn signal indicator.

Standstill function*: to avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the adaptive light control directs light towards the front passenger side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

When you are reversing, only the corner-illuminating lamps are active and switched on on both sides.

FarmaSos.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Malfunction

The LED next to the symbol for automatic headlamp control flashes. Adaptive light control is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High beams/roadside parking lamps*

1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Roadside parking lamps*

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

There is an additional option of switching on the lamps on the side of the car facing the road when parked.

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the pressure point for approx. 1 second, arrow **3**.

The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time; otherwise, the battery might not have enough power to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Press the lever in the opposite direction to the pressure point, arrow **3**.

High-beam assistant*

The concept

This system automatically switches the high beams on and off. The procedure is controlled by a sensor on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on whenever the traffic situation allows. It handles this task for you and gives you the benefit of the best possible view. You can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating the system

1. Turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 86.
2. With the low beams switched on, briefly push the turn indicator lever in the direction of the high beam.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the high beams are activated. The system automatically switches from high beams to low beams and vice versa in response to oncoming traffic, traffic ahead of you, and adequate ambient lighting, e.g. on city streets.

Switching the high beams on and off manually

Whenever you wish, or when the situation requires, you can intervene:

- If the high-beam assistant switches on the high beams, but you would like to drive with the low beams, simply switch off the high beams using the turn indicator lever. This deactivates the high-beam assistant.
  To reactivate the system, briefly push the turn indicator lever toward the high beams again.
- If the high-beam assistant switches on the low beams, but you would like to drive with the high beams, switch on the high beams as usual. This deactivates the system and the high beams need to be switched off manually, if necessary.
  To reactivate the system, briefly push the

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

turn indicator lever toward the high beams again.

- Use the headlamp flasher as usual with the low beams switched on.

System limitations

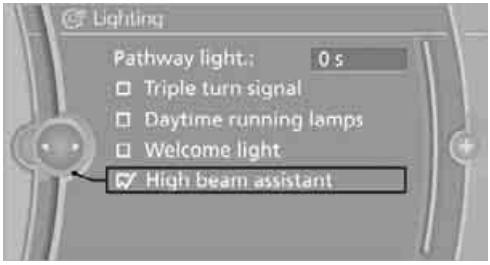
The high-beam assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where this is required to avoid a safety risk.◀

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation
- In detecting poorly-lit road users, such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways
- In poorly lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs
- At low speeds
- When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.
- If the sensor is dirty. Clean the sensor on the front of the interior rearview mirror using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

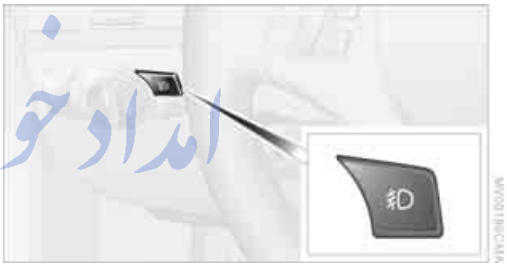
Switching off via iDrive

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "High beam assistant"



The high-beam assistant is activated and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Fog lamps*



To switch on/off, press the button.

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on for the fog lamps to operate. The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up whenever the fog lamps are on.

The fog lamps are switched off while you activate the headlamp flasher or switch on the high beams.

If the automatic headlamp control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

Instrument lighting

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting only when the parking lamps or the low beams are switched on.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSos.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the brightness level and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.

3. Push button **1** up or down to select the desired brightness level.
4. Press button **2**.
   The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Interior lamps

The interior lamps, footwell lamps*, entry lamps*, cargo area lamp and courtesy lamps* are controlled automatically.

The LEDs for the courtesy lamps are set in the door handles and illuminate the ground in front of the doors.

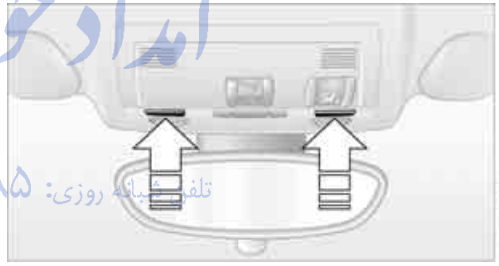
To avoid draining the battery, all lamps inside the car are switched off about 8 minutes after the ignition is switched off, refer to Start/stop button on page 55.◀

Switching interior lamps on/off manually

Interior lamps, front and rear*:
To switch on and off, press the button.

To switch off the interior lamps, footwell lamps*, entry lamps* and courtesy lamps* permanently, press the button for the front interior lamps for about 3 seconds.

Reading lamps

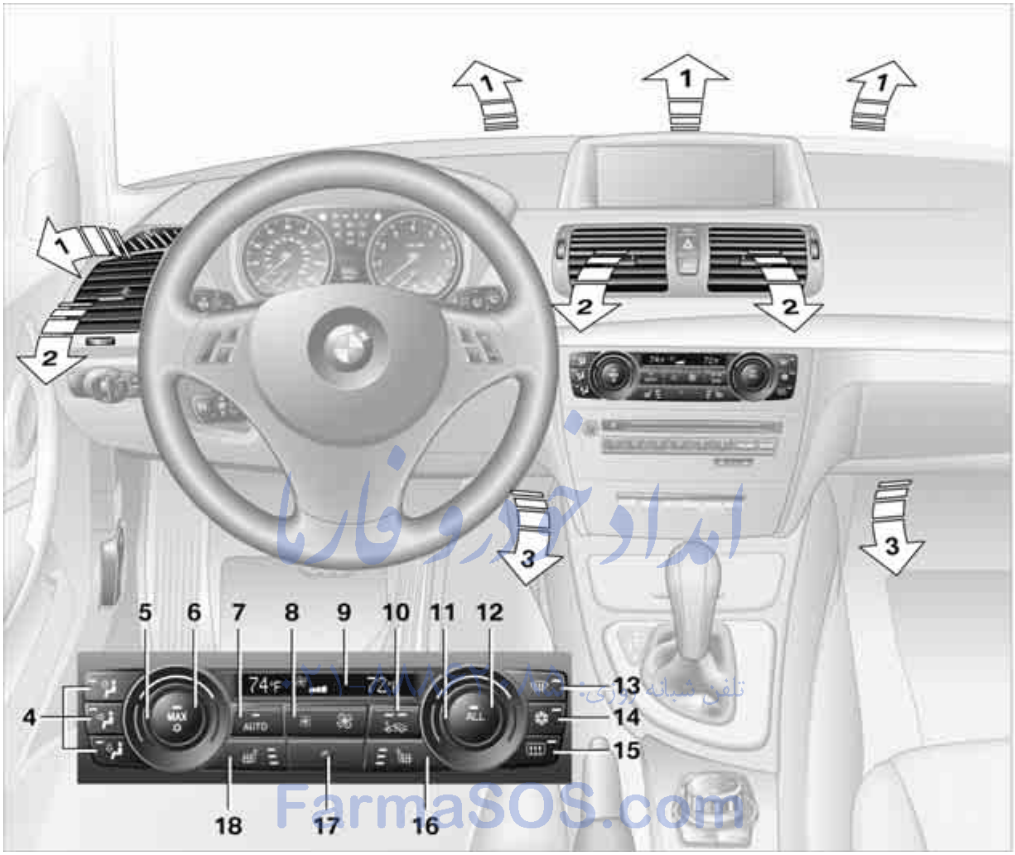


There are reading lamps at the front and rear*, next to the interior lamps. To switch on and off, press the button.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن پاسخگویی روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSos.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Climate



1 Airflow directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air to the upper body area: Draft-free ventilation 94

3 Air to the footwell

4 Air distribution, manual

5 Setting the temperature, left side

6 Maximum cooling

7 AUTO program

8 Air volume, manual adjustment; AUTO intensity

9 Display

10 Automatic recirculated-air control AUC/ Recirculated-air mode

11 Setting the temperature, right side

12 ALL program

13 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

14 Switching cooling function on/off manually

15 Rear window defroster

16 Seat heating*, right side 48

17 Interior temperature sensor, please keep clear

18 Seat heating*, left side 48

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Automatic climate control

Comfortable interior climate

AUTO program **7** offers the ideal air distribution and air volume for almost all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. All you need to do is select an interior temperature which is comfortable for you.

The following sections inform you in detail about how to adjust the settings.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile settings on page 26.

Adjusting air distribution manually

The air distribution can be switched on and off manually. The air is directed to the windshield, to the upper body area and to the footwell.

The automatic air distribution can be switched back on by pressing the AUTO button. The cooling function is switched on automatically and the manual air distribution setting is cleared.

Temperature

Turn to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible regardless of the season, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary, and then maintains it.

Avoid rapid switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Maximum heating power can be obtained with the highest setting, regardless of the outside temperature.

The system cools steadily in the lowest setting, regardless of the outside temperature.

Maximum cooling

Press the button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air volume and recirculated-air mode.

Air flows out of the vent outlets for the upper body region. Open them for this purpose.

Air is cooled as quickly as possible:

- Above an outside temperature of approx. 32 °F /0 °C
- When the engine is running

AUTO program

Press the button.

Air volume, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and outside influences, the air is directed toward the windshield, the side windows, the upper body and the footwell.

Pressing the AUTO button automatically switches on the cooling function.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The program is switched off when the air distribution is set manually or the button is pressed again.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air volume and air distribution can be adjusted:

Press the left side of the button to reduce the intensity. Press the right side of the button to increase it.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Convertible program

The Convertible program is active when the convertible top is open and the AUTO program is switched on. In the Convertible program, the

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

automatic climate control is optimized for driving with the convertible top down. In addition, the air volume is increased as vehicle speed increases.

The effectiveness of the Convertible program can be enhanced considerably by installing the wind deflector.◀

Adjusting air volume manually

To be able to manually adjust the air volume, switch off the AUTO program first.

Press the left side of the button to reduce the air volume. Press the right side of the button to increase it.

The air volume may be reduced or the blower may be switched off entirely to save on battery power. The display remains the same.

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC/Recirculated-air mode

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press the button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- Left-hand LED on, AUC mode: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.
- Right-hand LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off. If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air volume, if necessary. Make sure that air can flow onto the windshield.

The recirculated-air mode should not be used continuously for lengthy periods; otherwise, the quality of the air inside the car will gradually deteriorate.◀

Via the button on the steering wheel

You can switch quickly between the recirculated-air mode and the previous mode using a button on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

ALL program

Press the button.

The current temperature setting on the driver's side is transferred to the front passenger side.

If the temperature setting on the driver's side is changed, the temperature on the front passenger side is changed as well.

The program is switched off when the setting is adjusted on the front passenger side or the button is pressed again.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Press the button.

Quickly removes ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.

For this purpose, also switch on the cooling function.

Switching cooling function on/off

The passenger compartment can only be cooled while the engine is running.

Press the button.

The air is cooled and dehumidified and – depending on the temperature setting – warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

Pressing the AUTO button automatically switches on the cooling function.

Rear window defroster

Press the button.

The defroster is switched off automatically after a certain time.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the upper wires serve as an antenna and are not part of the rear window defroster.

FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Switching the system on/off

Switching off

With the blower at its lowest setting, press the left side of the button to switch off the automatic climate control.

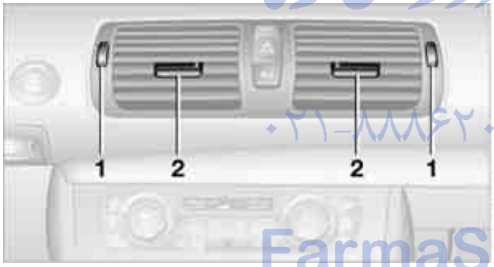
All displays are cleared except for the rear window defroster if it is switched on.

The outside air supply is blocked when the automatic climate control is switched off. If the air quality deteriorates or the window fogs over, switch the system back on and increase the air volume.◀

Switching on

Press any button except the ALL or the rear window defroster button to reactivate the automatic climate control.

Ventilation



1 Use the thumbwheels to smoothly open and close the air vents

2 Use the lever to change the direction of the airflow

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance if it has become too hot in the car.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and not straight at you.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter during routine maintenance.

Parked car ventilation*

The concept

The parked car ventilation provides ventilation to the passenger compartment and lowers its temperature, if necessary.

The parked car ventilation system is operated via iDrive, refer to page 16. Two different switch-on times can be preselected.

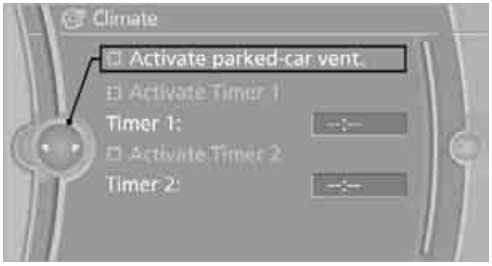
The parked car ventilation remains switched on for approx. 30 minutes. The system can also be switched on and off directly. Due to its high power consumption, it should not be switched on twice in a row without driving in between to allow the battery to recharge.

The parked car ventilation system comes on if the outside temperature is above 59 °F/15 °C when the switch-on time was preselected, but is ready for use at any temperature when the system is switched on directly.

The air emerges from the air vents for the upper body area in the instrument panel. The air vents must therefore be open.

Switching on and off directly

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate parked-car vent."



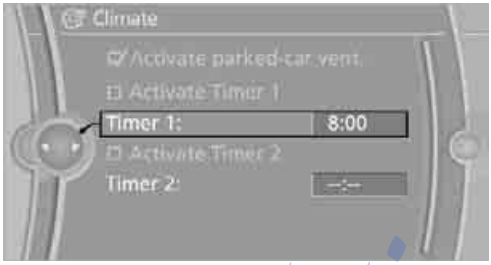
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The parked car ventilation is switched on.
The symbol on the automatic climate control display flashes.

Preselecting switch-on times

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate Timer 1" or "Activate Timer 2"
4. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"



5. Turn the controller: set the hours.
6. Press the controller: the setting is accepted.
7. Turn the controller: set the minutes.
8. Press the controller: the setting is accepted.

The switch-on time is activated.
The symbol on the automatic climate control display lights up.

The symbol on the automatic climate control display flashes when the system has switched on.

The respective system is switched on within the next 24 hours only. After these have elapsed, it must be reactivated.◀

امداد خودرو فارس
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled devices, such as garage doors and gates or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. After this, the programmed memory button **1** will operate the system in question. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page 97.

To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the pivoting or travel range of the device being operated. Comply also with the safety instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter.◀

Checking compatibility

If this symbol appears on the package or in the instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, you can assume that the radio remote control device will be compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

For additional information, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515.
You can also obtain information on the Internet at:
www.bmwusa.com or
www.homelink.com.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

Programming

1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 55.
2. When starting operation for the first time: press the left and right memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes rapidly. The three memory buttons are cleared.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 to 12 in/10 to 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the system of the respective original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit key on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat this step.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

You can operate the device while the ignition is switched on.

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly and then remains lit for about two seconds, the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. If it uses an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described under Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the device to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization. When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

If you have any questions, please contact your BMW center.◀

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes rapidly: all stored programs are deleted.

Reassigning individual programs

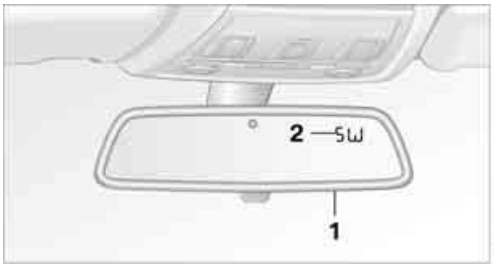
1. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 to 12 in/10 to 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the system of the respective original hand-held transmitter used.◀
2. Press the desired memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control.
3. If the LED **2** flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the transmit key of the original hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons as soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat this step.

ایران خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Digital compass*



1 Adjustment button

2 Display

The display shows you the main or secondary compass direction in which you are driving.

Operating principle

You can call up various functions by pressing the adjustment button with a pointed object such as a pen or similar item. The following adjustment options are displayed one after the other, depending on how long you keep the adjustment button pressed:

- Press briefly: switch display on/off
- 3 to 6 seconds: set compass zone
- 6 to 9 seconds: calibrate compass
- 9 to 12 seconds: set left-hand/right-hand steering
- 12 to 15 seconds: set the language

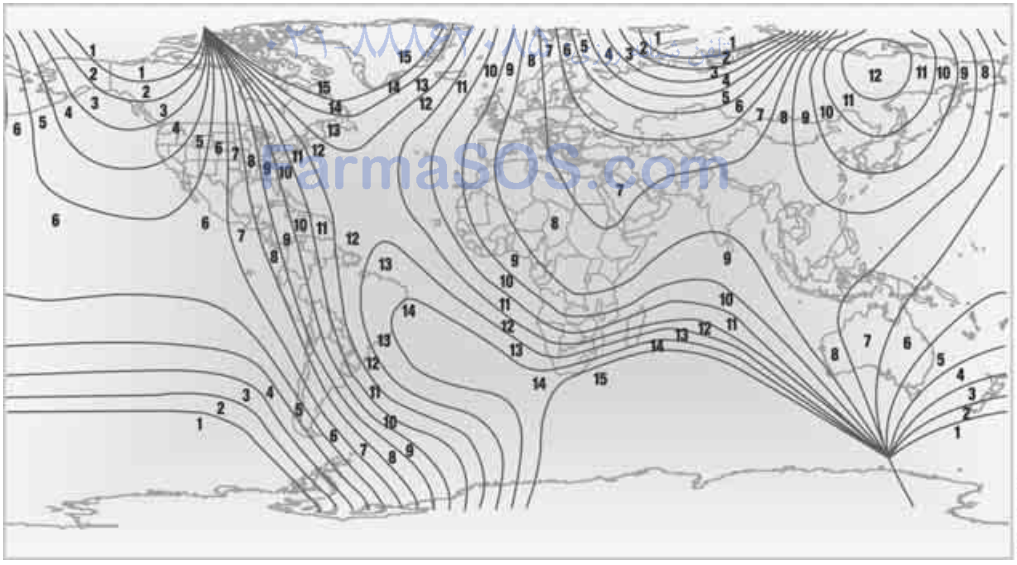
Setting compass zones

Set the compass zone corresponding to your vehicle's geographic location so that the compass can function correctly; refer to the world map with compass zones.

To set the compass zone, press the adjustment button for approx. 3-4 seconds. The number of the compass zone set is shown in the display.

To change the zone setting, briefly press the adjustment button repeatedly until the display shows the number of the compass zone corresponding to your current location.

The compass is operational again after approx. 10 seconds.



Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the following situations:

- An incorrect compass direction is shown.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

- The compass direction shown does not change although the direction of travel does.
- Not all compass directions are shown.

Procedure

1. Make sure that no large metal objects or overhead power lines are in the vicinity of your vehicle and that you have enough space to drive in a circle.
2. Set the currently valid compass zone.
3. Convertible: ensure that the convertible top is fully closed.
4. Press the adjustment button for approx. 6-7 seconds to call up C. Then drive in at least one full circle at a speed of no more than 4 mph or 7 km/h.
   If calibration is successful, the display changes from C to a compass direction.
5. Convertible: open the convertible top fully and repeat step 4.

Setting right-hand/left-hand steering

Your digital compass is factory-set to right-hand or left-hand steering, in accordance with your vehicle.

Setting the language

You can set the language of the display:

Press the adjustment button for approx. 12-13 seconds. Briefly press the adjustment button again to switch between English, "E", and German, "O".

The setting is automatically saved after approx. 10 seconds.

Glove compartment

Opening

Pull the handle.
The light in the glove compartment comes on.

⚠ To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

Fold the cover up.

Locking

To lock the glove compartment, use the integrated key of the remote control, refer to page 26.

USB interface for data transmission

Port for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g. music collections, refer to page 158.

Observe the following when connecting:

- Do not forcibly connect the plug to the USB interface.
- Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB interface.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۷۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

- Do not connect USB hard drives.
- Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Center armrest

Storage compartment

The center armrest between the front seats contains a credit card holder and, depending on the equipment version, a compartment or a snap-in adapter*.

Opening

Press the button, see arrow.

Connection for external audio device

You can connect an external audio device such as a CD or MP3 player and play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system:

- AUX-IN port, refer to page 159
- USB audio interface*/additional connection of the music player in the mobile phone*, refer to page 159

Storage compartments inside the vehicle

Compartments are located next to the steering column*, on the doors and in the center console.
There are nets* on the front-seat backrests.

Coupe: clothes hooks

There are clothes hooks in the rear.

⚠ Items of clothing hung from the hooks must not obstruct the driver's view. Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

Cupholders

⚠ Use lightweight and shatterproof containers and do not transport hot beverages; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of the accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the cupholders; otherwise, damage could result.◀

There is one cupholder in the center console.

You can mount an attachable cupholder* on the side of the center console.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۲۱۰۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Ashtray*

Opening

Push the ridge on the cover.

Emptying

Lift out the insert.

Lighter

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, press in the cigarette lighter.

The lighter can be pulled out as soon as it pops back out.

Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.
When leaving the car, always remove the remote control so that children cannot operate the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.◀

Connecting electrical appliances

In your BMW, when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on, you can use electrical devices such as a hand lamp, car vacuum cleaner, etc., up to approx. 200 watts at 12 volts, as long as one of the following sockets is available. Avoid damaging the socket by attempting to insert plugs of unsuitable shape or size.

Cigarette lighter socket*

To access the socket:
Open the ashtray at the front and pull out the lighter to use the socket.

In the cargo area*

To access the socket:
Fold open the cover.

In the center console

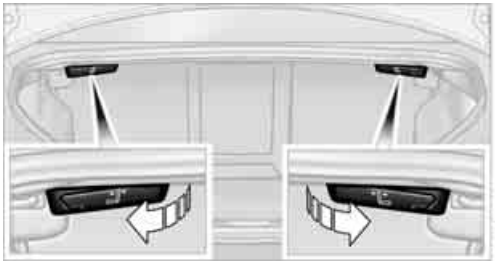
To access the socket, refer to External devices on page 159.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

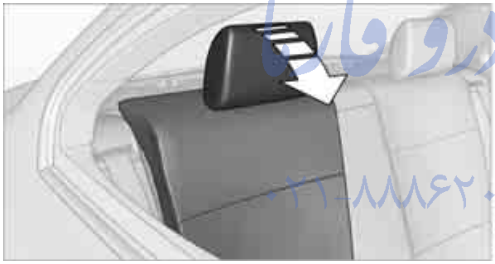
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Coupe: through-loading system

Opening



1. To release the rear seat backrest, pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area.
2. The unlocked rear seat backrest moves forward slightly. Fold the backrest forward by the head restraint.



Closing

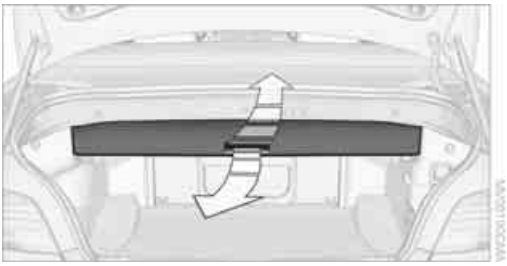
Return the rear seat backrest to the upright seating position and engage it.

When returning the backrest into the seating position, make sure that the seat's locking mechanism is properly engaged. Otherwise, cargo could be thrown around and endanger the occupants in the event of sharp braking or swerving.◀

The lashing eyes in the cargo area provide you with a way to attach cargo area nets* or draw straps for securing suitcases and luggage, refer to page 110.

Convertible: cargo loading

Enlarging the cargo area



When the convertible top is closed you can enlarge the cargo area:
To do so, fold the cargo area partition upward.

Before opening the convertible top, pull the cargo area partition down until it engages.

Ensure that pointed objects do not press against the cargo area partition from below.

The convertible top can only be opened when the cargo area partition is folded down.◀

Storage compartments inside the cargo area

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following storage spaces can be found in the cargo area:

- Rubber strap* on the left trim panel for securing small objects such as a folding umbrella
- Net* for small objects on the right trim panel of the cargo area
- Retaining straps* on cargo area floor: for securing smaller objects or as an anti-slip surface when you place objects on the straps

The lashing eyes in the cargo area provide you with a way to attach cargo area nets* or draw straps* for securing suitcases and luggage, refer to page 112.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Coupe: ski bag*

The ski bag is designed for safe, clean transport of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to 2 snowboards.

With the ski bag you can stow skis with a length of up to 6.6 ft/2.0 m. When skis of 6.6 ft/2.0 m length are loaded, the overall capacity of the ski bag is reduced due to its tapered design.

Loading

Ensure that the skis are clean when they are loaded into the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

1. Fold down the center panel in the rear seat backrest.
2. Press the button, reach into the recess and fold down the cover. To stabilize the cover in the folded-down position, place the center panel underneath it.

3. Open the Velcro fastener, spread the ski bag between the front seats and insert the skis or snowboards.
   The zip fastener makes objects in the ski bag easier to reach.
4. Attach the hook of the ski bag retaining strap to the eyelet on the side of the ski bag opening.

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

Secure the ski bag in the manner described; otherwise, it could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

To store the ski bag, perform the steps described for loading in reverse order.

Removing the ski bag

The ski bag can be completely removed, e.g. for faster drying or to allow you to use other inserts.

1. Fold down the center panel in the rear seat backrest.
2. Pull the handle, arrow **1**.
3. Pull out the insert, arrow **2**.

For more information on the various inserts available, contact your BMW center.◀

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Convertible: through-loading opening with integrated transport bag*

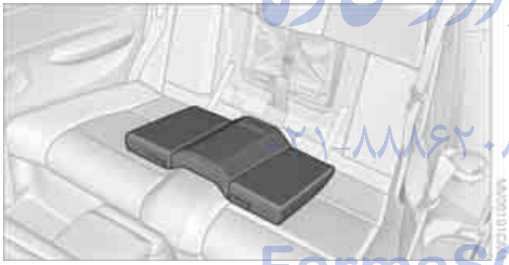
The transport bag is designed for safe, clean transport of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to 2 snowboards.

With the transport bag you can stow skis up to a length of 6.6 ft /2.0 m. When skis of 6.6 ft/2.0 m length are loaded, the overall capacity of the ski bag is reduced due to its tapered design.

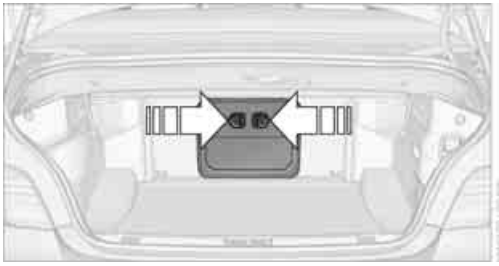
When using the transport bag, it is not permissible to transport passengers in the rear seats.◀

Loading

1. Pull the grip in the filler piece of the rear backrest up and take out the filler piece.
2. Place the filler piece onto the seat cushion with the backrest side facing up.



3. In the cargo area: press the two recesses together and fold down the cover.



4. Release the strap, lay out the transport bag between the front seats and load it.

The zip fastener makes objects in the ski bag easier to reach.

Ensure that the skis are clean when you load them into the transport bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the transport bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

Secure the transport bag in the manner described; otherwise, it could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

To store the transport bag, perform the steps described for loading in reverse order.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Driving tips

This section provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. Please follow the instructions below in order to achieve the optimal service life and economy of operation for your vehicle.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed an engine speed of 4,500 rpm or a road speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kickdown mode.

After driving 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Engine and vehicle speeds can be gradually increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive cautiously during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive cautiously during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

Saving fuel

The fuel consumption of your vehicle depends on several factors. You can lower fuel consumption and the environmental impact by taking certain measures, adjusting your driving style and having the vehicle serviced regularly.

Remove any unneeded cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove any mounted parts after you have finished using them

Remove unneeded additional mirrors, the roof rack and the rear luggage rack after use. Mounted parts affect the vehicle's aerodynamics and increase fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass roof

An open glass roof or window causes higher air resistance and thus increases fuel consumption.

Check tire inflation pressure regularly

Check the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before embarking on a long journey, and correct it if necessary.

Low tire inflation pressure causes higher rolling resistance and thus increases fuel consumption and tire wear.

Set off immediately

Do not let the engine warm up while the car is still standing, but set off immediately at moderate engine speed. This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Drive defensively

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking maneuvers. To do so, keep an adequate distance between you and the vehicle in front of you. A defensive and smooth driving style keeps fuel consumption down.

Avoid high engine speeds

Only use first gear when setting off. In second and higher gears, accelerate without hesitation or pauses. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Coasting

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and coast to a stop in the highest applicable gear.

On a downhill slope, take your foot off the accelerator and coast in a suitable gear.

The fuel supply is interrupted when coasting.

Switch off the engine during lengthy stops

Switch off the engine when stopping for lengthy periods, e.g. at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestions. You achieve fuel savings even if standing time is as short as approx. 4 seconds.

Switch off functions you do not need at the moment

Functions such as the air conditioner, seat heating or rear window defroster draw large amounts of power and consume additional fuel. Especially in city traffic and in stop-and-go driving they have a considerable impact. Therefore, switch these functions off when they are not really needed.

Have the vehicle serviced

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve good economy and a long vehicle life. BMW recommends having the vehicle serviced at a BMW center. Also note the BMW service system, refer to page 203.

General driving notes

Close the trunk lid

Operate the vehicle only when the trunk lid is closed. Otherwise, exhaust fumes could enter the interior of the vehicle.◀

If the vehicle must be driven with the trunk lid open:

1. Close all windows and the glass roof.
2. Greatly increase the air volume of the automatic climate control system, refer to page 93.

Hot exhaust system

In all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated in the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed in its vicinity, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, with the risk of serious personal injuries and property damage. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise, there is a risk of burns.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This situation, known as hydroplaning, means that the tire can completely lose contact with the road surface, so that neither the car can be steered nor the brake be properly applied.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases with declining tread depth on the tires, refer also to Minimum tread depth on page 195.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Driving through water

Drive through water on the road only if it is not deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Use the parking brake on inclines

On inclines, do not hold the vehicle for a lengthy period using the clutch; use the parking brake instead. Otherwise, greater clutch wear will result.◀

For more information about the drive-off assistant, refer to page 77.

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations in which this is necessary. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal, combined with sounds from the hydraulic circuits, indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, all the way to first gear if necessary. This strategy helps you avoid placing excessive loads on the brake system. Downshifting in manual mode of the automatic transmission, refer to page 58.

Never drive with the clutch held down, with the transmission in neutral or with the engine switched off; otherwise, engine braking action will not be present or there will be no power assistance to the brakes or steering. Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area around the pedals, otherwise, pedal function could be impaired.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When the vehicle is parked

Condensation forms while the automatic climate control is in operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Cargo loading

To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This can ultimately result in a sudden blowout.◀

Make sure that no liquids are spilled or leak from their containers in the cargo

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

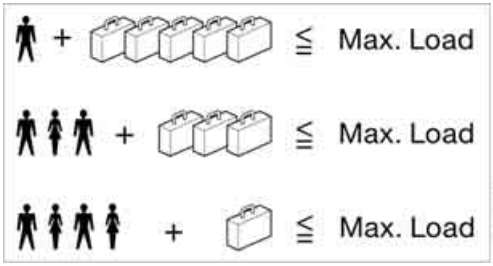
area, as this could result in damage to the vehicle.◀

Determining loading limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

   The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, overloading can result in damage to the vehicle and unstable driving conditions.◀
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs:
   1,400 lbs. minus 750 lbs. = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

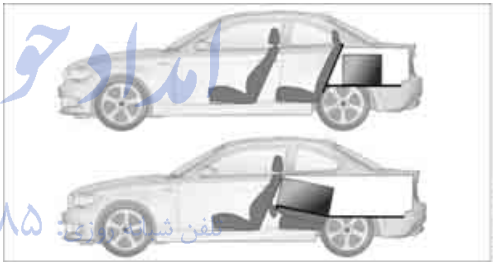
Load



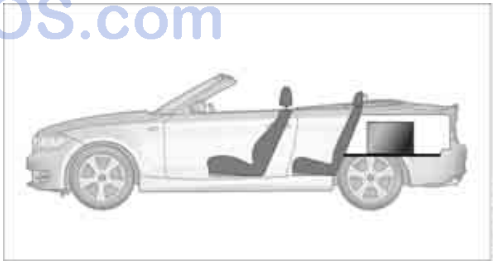
The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo

Coupe



Convertible

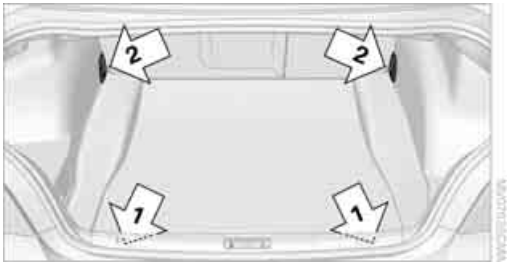


- ▷ Position heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible, ideally directly behind the respective seat backrests.
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.
- ▷ For very heavy cargo when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each safety belt in the opposite buckle.

امداد خودرو مارا
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
CarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Securing cargo



- Secure smaller and lighter items using retaining straps*, a cargo area net* or draw straps*.
- Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. To attach the cargo straps, there are two lashing eyes, arrows **1**, on the inside wall of the cargo area. Depending on your vehicle's equipment, there may be two additional lashing eyes, arrows **2**, on the cargo area sidewalls. Follow the information included with the cargo straps.

Always position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the car's occupants, for example if sudden braking or swerving is necessary.
Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 225, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.
Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car, since they could be thrown around, for example as a result of heavy braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants.
Only attach the cargo straps using the lashing eyes shown in the illustration. Do not secure cargo with the anchors for tether straps, refer to page 53, otherwise, these could be damaged.◀

Coupe: roof-mounted luggage rack*

A special rack system is available as an option for your BMW. Comply with the directions given in the installation instructions.

Mounting points

Fold open the cover.

Loading roof-mounted luggage rack

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.
You should therefore always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the applicable data under Weights on page 225.

The roof load must be distributed uniformly and should not be too large in area. Heavy items should always be placed at the bottom. Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for raising the glass roof, and that objects do not project into the opening path of the trunk lid.

Fasten roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely to prevent it from shifting or falling off during the trip.

Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Rear luggage rack*

A rear luggage rack is available as a special accessory for your BMW. Comply with the directions given in the installation instructions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Mounting points

The mounting points are located under the protective covers in the bumper.

Loading the rear luggage rack

You should always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the applicable data under Weights on page 225.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Navigation system*

General information

With the help of satellites, the navigation system is able to ascertain the precise position of the vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◀

Navigation data

General information

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

Navigation data and authorization codes are available from your BMW center.

Depending on the data volume, a data update may take several hours.

- ▷ The data are updated while you are driving.
- ▷ The update is resumed automatically when a trip is continued after an interruption.
- ▷ All functions are available during the trip.
- ▷ The data are stored in the vehicle.
- ▷ After the update, the system restarts.
- ▷ The medium that holds the navigation data can be removed after the update is completed.

Updating the navigation data

Inserting navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD into the DVD player with the labeled side facing up.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
3. Enter the authorization code of the navigation DVD and change the DVD if needed.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

Displaying information on the version

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version":
   Information on the data version is displayed.

ایران خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from the following options:

- Entering a destination manually, see below
- Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 119
- Last destinations, refer to page 120
- Special destinations, refer to page 120
- Entering a destination on the map, refer to page 122
- Selecting home address, refer to page 120
- Entering a destination by voice commands*, refer to page 123
- Destination entry via BMW Assist*, refer to page 121

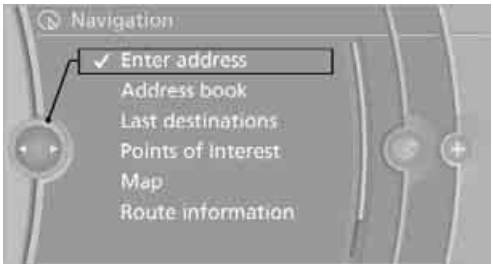
You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 20.

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Otherwise, vehicle occupants and other road users may be endangered.◀

Entering a destination manually

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns, refer to page 125. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically, so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. "Navigation"
3. "Enter address"



The system also supports you with the following features:

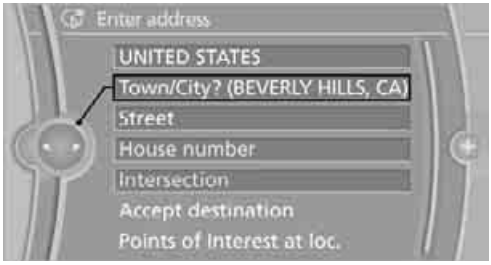
- If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town or city.
- You can skip the entry of state/province and town/city if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Entering a state/province

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "State/Province" or the displayed state/province.

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.



2. Select letters, if necessary.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

To delete letters:

- To delete individual letters: Turn the controller to select |←, and then press the controller.
- To delete all letters: Turn the controller to select |←, and then press the controller for an extended period.

To enter spaces:

- Select the ␣ symbol.

The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

3. Move the controller to the right.
4. Select the name of the town/city from the list.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.
2. Highlight the town/city: a preview map is displayed.
3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.
2. Select the 1@+ symbol.
3. Select the digits.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the postal code: a preview map is displayed.
6. Select the postal code.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter a street and intersection as you would the town/city.

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

If there are several streets with the same name:

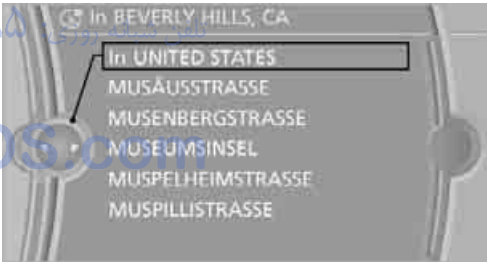
1. Change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street: a preview map is displayed.
3. Select the street.

Entering a street without a destination town/city

You can also enter a street without specifying a town/city. In this case, all streets of the same name in the designated state/province are offered. The corresponding town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can negate this entry. This could be helpful in instances where the desired street does not exist in the entered town/city because it belongs to another suburb, for example.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. Select "In" with the state/province currently displayed.



6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street: a preview map is displayed.
9. Select the street.

Entering a house number

You can enter any house number stored in the navigation data for the street.

1. "House number"
2. Select the digits.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Change to the list of house numbers.
4. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

Starting destination guidance after entering the destination

1. "Accept destination"
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

▷ Set your "Route preference", refer to page 126.

▷ Search for "Points of Interest at loc.", refer to page 120.

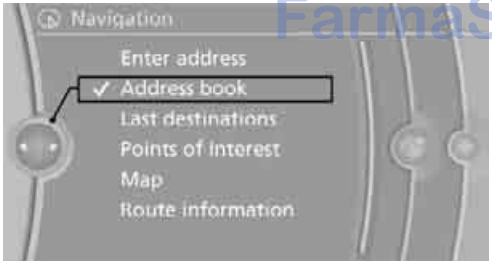
Address book

To create contacts, refer to page 178.

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
   Contacts with addresses are displayed if these have been checked as destinations.

   If the contacts with addresses from the mobile phone are not displayed, they first need to be checked as destinations, refer to page 179.

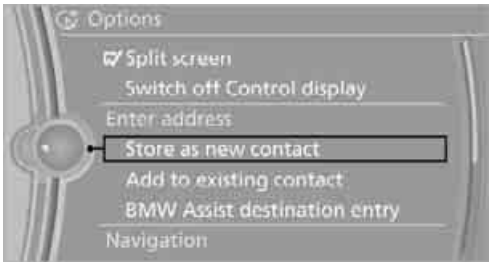


3. Select a contact from the list or, if necessary, using "A-Z search".
4. If necessary, select "Business address" or "Home address".

Storing a destination in the address book

Store the destination in the address book after entering the destination.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".

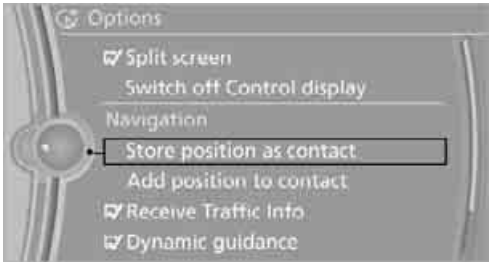


3. Select an existing contact, if available.
4. Select "Business address" or "Home address".
5. Enter "Last name" and, if necessary, "First name".
6. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

Your current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact".



4. Depending on the selection, select an existing contact from the list or the type of address and enter the last and first name.
5. "Store in vehicle"

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSos.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

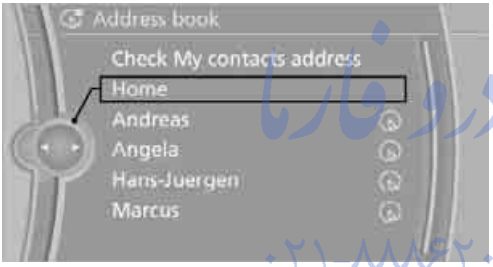
Editing or deleting an address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry".

Using the home address as a destination

The home address must be stored as a destination. Refer to Specifying a contact as the home address, page 178.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home"



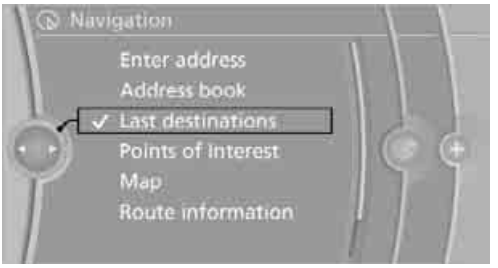
4. "Start guidance"

Last destinations

The last destinations are stored automatically. These destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Opening the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"



3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance"

Editing a destination

Destinations can be edited, for example, to change the house number of an existing entry.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations".

Special destinations

You can search for a special destination, e.g. a hotel or place of interest, and start destination guidance to the corresponding location.

The search can be narrowed by entering the location and type of special destination.

The scope of information provided depends on the particular set of navigation data you are using.◀

FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۲۰۸۵

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Opening the search for special destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"

Special destination location

Search for a special destination according to its location relative to a locality or route.

1. "Search area"

2. Select the location where the system is to search for the special destination:
   - ▷ "At current location"
   - ▷ "At destination"
   - ▷ "At a different destination"
   - ▷ "Along route"

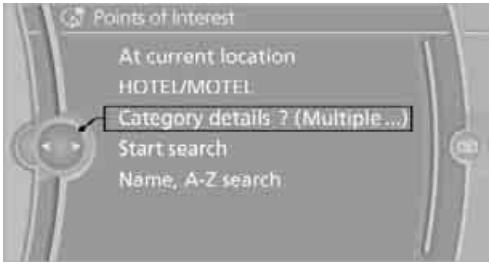
Special destination category

1. "Category"
2. Select "All" or a specific category, e.g. hotels or restaurants.

Category details

For some special destinations, additional details can be displayed that are available in the navigation data, e.g. Italian-style restaurant.

"Category details"



Starting the search for special destinations

1. "Start search"
2. A list of the special destinations is displayed.
   - ▷ "At current location"
     Special destinations are listed according to their distance from the current location and are displayed with a directional arrow pointing to the destination.
   - ▷ "At destination", "At a different destination", "Along route"
     Special destinations are listed according to their distance from the location where the search is being performed.
   - ▷ Destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map view as symbols. The display depends on the map scale and the category.
3. Highlight a special destination: the destination is displayed in the preview map.
4. Select the special destination.
5. Select the symbol.
6. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established, if desired.

Destination entry via BMW Assist*

A connection is established to the BMW Concierge service, refer to page 181.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Open "Options".
4. "BMW Assist dest. entry"

Entering special destinations by name

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"
3. "Name, A-Z search"
4. Enter the letters.
   Depending on the distance, the search may take some time. The list can contain a maximum of 100 entries.

۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

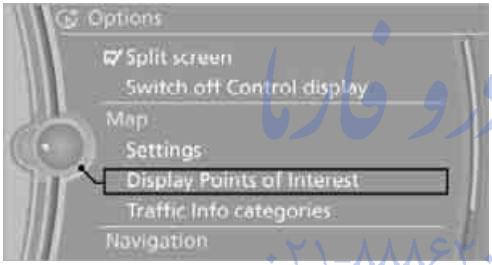
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

5. Change to the list of special destinations.
6. Highlight a special destination: the destination is displayed in the preview map.
7. Select the special destination.
8. Select the symbol.
9. "Start guidance"

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display Points of Interest"



5. Select the settings.

Entering the destination via the map

If you only know the location of the town or street, you can enter the destination using the map.

Opening the map

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

A map section is displayed on the Control Display. The map shows the current position of the vehicle.

Selecting the destination

1. Select the symbol. The interactive map is started.

2. Select the destination with the cross-hairs.
   - To change the scale: turn the controller.
   - To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
   - To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.
3. Press the controller to display additional menu items.
   - Select the symbol: "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".
   - "Return": return to the map view.
   - "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started.

Specifying the street

If the system cannot recognize a street, it displays a street name in the vicinity or the coordinates of the destination.

Interactive map

In the interactive map, the scale can be adjusted and the visible map section can be shifted. In

ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۴۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

addition, pressing the controller makes further functions available:

- Select the symbol and "Start guidance", if necessary.
- "Exit interactive map"
- Map view
- "Display destination"
  The map section around the destination is displayed.
- "Display current location"
  The map section around your current location is displayed.
- "Find points of interest", refer to page 120.

Entering a destination by voice commands*

General information

You can enter a desired destination via the voice activation system. During the destination input, you can switch between voice entry and entry via iDrive at any time. To do so, reactivate the voice activation system if necessary.

You can have the possible commands read aloud via ›Voice commands‹.◀

Saying the entries

- Countries, towns and cities, streets and intersections can be said as whole words or spelled in the system language, refer to page 73.

  Example: to enter a destination in a US state as a complete word, the system language must be English.
- The town/city, street and house number can be said as a single sentence.*
- Spell the entry if the language region and the system language differ.
- Say the letters smoothly, and avoid exaggerating the pronunciation and inserting lengthy pauses between the letters.

Entering an address*

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹
3. Wait for a request from the system.
4. Say the town or city, street and house number in a single sentence.
5. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.
6. If necessary, individually name the separate components of the address, e.g. the town/city.

Entering a town/city

The town/city can be spelled or entered as a complete word*.

The methods of entry depend on the navigation data in use and the country and language settings.◀

1. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹
2. Wait for the system to prompt you for the town/city.
3. Say the name of the town/city, or name at least the first three letters.

   Depending on the entry, up to 20 towns/cities may be suggested.
4. Select a location:
   - To select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹
   - To select other town/city: ›New entry‹
   - To select an entry: e.g. ›Entry 2‹
   - To spell an entry: ›Spell city‹

Identical-sounding towns/cities that cannot be distinguished by the system are compiled in a separate list and shown as a town/

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۰
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

city followed by three dots.
If necessary, select this entry with ›Yes‹. Then select the desired town/city from that list.◀

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive: turn the controller until the town/city is selected and press the controller.

Entering a street or intersection

The street or intersection is entered in the same manner as the town/city.

Entering a house number

You can enter house numbers up to 999:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.
3. ›Yes‹ to confirm the house number.
4. ›Accept destination‹

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Adding further intermediate destinations

›Add as another destination‹

Further intermediate destinations can be added.

Storing destinations

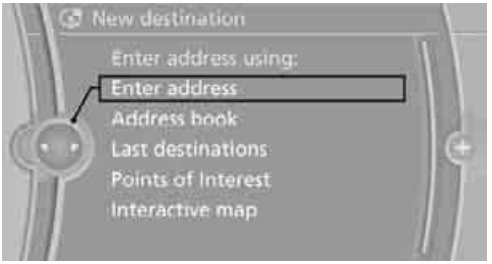
The destination is automatically added to the list of last destinations.

Planning a trip

New trip

Various intermediate destinations can be entered for a trip.

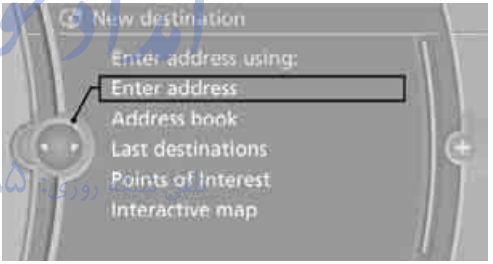
1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left, if necessary.
4. Select the symbol.
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.



Entering further intermediate destinations

A maximum of 30 intermediate destinations can be entered for one trip.

1. "Enter new destination"
2. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.



3. Select "Add as another dest.".
4. Select the location where the intermediate destination is to be inserted.

Starting the trip

After all intermediate destinations have been entered:
"Start guidance"

Storing a trip

Up to 30 created trips can be stored in the trip list.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"
3. Enter the letters.
4. "OK"

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The trip is stored in the trip list under the entered name.

Starting a stored trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. "Start guidance"

Changing trips

Changing the trip direction

Intermediate destinations can be displayed in reverse order after destination guidance is started.

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reverse order of trip dest."

Rearranging the intermediate destinations

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip dest."
4. Select an intermediate destination.
5. "Reposition dest. in the trip"

Deleting an intermediate destination

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip dest."
4. Select an intermediate destination.
5. "Delete dest. in the trip"

Deleting a trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete all trips" or "Delete trip".

Word-matching principle

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of towns or streets. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored in the vehicle as the basis for instant response. The benefits for you include:

- Names of towns entered may differ from the official versions if you are using a spelling that is customary in another country.

  Example:

  Instead of the German spelling "München" you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".
- When you are entering the names of towns and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- The system offers only those letters for selection of name entries that are stored in the vehicle. Thus, entry of erroneous or unregistered names is impossible.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select the destination.
4. "Accept destination"
5. "Start guidance"

The route is displayed on the Control Display after it is calculated.

Terminating destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Stop guidance"

Continuing destination guidance

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, destination guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

Route criteria

General information

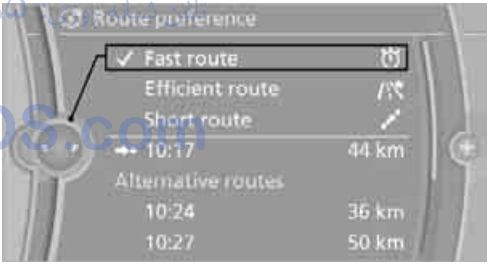
You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like during destination entry or during destination guidance.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. whether it is a highway or a winding road. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route preference"
4. Selecting a criterion:
   - ▷ "Fast route": time-optimized route, which is a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
   - ▷ "Efficient route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest roads
   - ▷ "Short route": short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be
   - ▷ "Alternative routes": other suggested alternative routes while destination guidance is active



5. Select additional route criteria, if desired. Where possible, the selected criteria will be avoided on the route.
   - ▷ Avoid highways where possible: "Avoid highways"
   - ▷ Avoid toll roads where possible: "Avoid toll roads"
   - ▷ Avoid ferries where possible: "Avoid ferries"

The setting applies to the current route and to the planning of future routes.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Dynamic destination guidance

"Dynamic guidance" is switched on:
The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions. The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route.

Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

If the "Avoid highways", "Avoid toll roads" or "Avoid ferries" route criteria are selected, route calculation may take longer.◀

Route

General information

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, various views of the route are available during destination guidance.

- List of streets and towns/cities
- Map view, refer to page 128

Displaying a list of the streets or towns/cities on the route

When destination guidance is started, a list of the streets and towns/cities on the route is displayed. The driving distances and traffic bulletins are displayed for each route section.

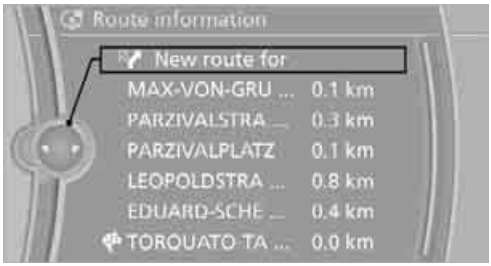
1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. Highlight a section.

The section is displayed in the preview map.

Bypassing a section of the route

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"



4. Turn the controller: enter the desired number of miles.
5. Press the controller.

Resuming the original route

If the route section should no longer be bypassed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Remove blocking"

Gas station recommendations

The remaining range is calculated and gas stations along the route are recommended.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"
   A list of gas stations is displayed.
4. Select a gas station.
5. Select the ⛽ symbol.
6. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

Destination guidance through voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off

Voice instructions can be switched on or off during destination guidance.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSos.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Select the symbol.

Symbol	Meaning
	Voice instructions are switched on
	Voice instructions are switched off

For rapid access, the feature can be stored on a programmable memory key, refer to page 20.

Repeating a voice instruction

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Highlight the symbol.
4. Press the controller twice.

Adjusting the volume of voice instructions*

The volume can be adjusted only while a voice instruction is being issued.

1. Have the last voice instruction repeated, if necessary.
2. Turn the button during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Map view

Displaying the map view

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

The following functions are directly available in the map view:

Symbol	Function
	Starting/stopping destination guidance
	Switching voice instructions on/off
	Changing route criteria or selecting route alternatives
	Special destinations
	Displaying traffic bulletins
	Interactive map
N	Map view settings
	Changing scale

Information in the map view:

- Time, entertainment source, sound output, map orientation
- Distance from destination, estimated time of arrival, if destination guidance is active.
- Any traffic obstructions are highlighted in color.

To show/hide information on the map:
Press the controller.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Viewing the map

1. Select the symbol.
2. Select a setting:
   - "View facing north"
   - "View in dir. of travel"
   - "Perspective view"
   - "Arrow display"
3. Press the controller.

Changing the map section

Select the interactive map.

- To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
- To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Changing scale

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Automatic scaling of the map

In the map view facing north, turn the controller in any direction until AUTO is displayed as the map scale.
The map shows the entire range from your location to the destination.

Settings for the map view

The map is shown on the Control Display.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Settings"
3. Set the optimized map view.
   - "Day/night mode"
     Select and create the necessary settings depending on the light conditions. When the traffic bulletin map is activated, this setting is disregarded.
   - "Satellite images"
     Satellite images* are displayed depending on availability and resolution.
   - "Perspective view in 3D"
     Displays a spatial view. Prominent areas that are contained in the navigation data are displayed on the map in 3D.
   - "Traffic Info map"
     The map is optimized for displaying traffic bulletins. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

Map view for the split screen display

The map view for the split screen can be selected separately from the main screen.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Split screen"
   The split screen is switched on.
3. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen content is selected.
4. Select the map view:
   - "Arrow display"
   - "Map facing north"
   - "Map direction of travel"
   - "Map view with perspective"
   - "Exit ramp view"

Changing scale

1. Move the controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Turn the controller.

Traffic bulletins*

You can display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TMC (Traffic Message Channel) of a traffic information service. This information from the traffic information service is continuously updated on the basis of measurement data from traffic control centers and information on traffic congestion.
During destination guidance, traffic bulletins that are relevant to areas along the route are automatically displayed and taken into account in the route planning. You can open all traffic bulletins manually via iDrive.

The traffic bulletins are shown in the map view.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Real Time Traffic Information End-User Provisions

Certain BMW models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network") holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. ("BMW NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

C. The licensed material is provided to license "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. nor BMW NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or BMW NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

Activating/deactivating reception

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. Activate/deactivate "Receive Traffic Info".

In many metropolitan areas you can receive traffic information broadcast by radio stations. The traffic conditions are monitored by traffic control centers and the traffic information is updated periodically.
During destination guidance, the traffic bulletins relevant to your planned route are automatically shown. Whether destination guidance is active or not, you can have the traffic bulletins displayed in the map view or in the traffic info list.

Traffic bulletins in a list

A list of the traffic bulletins can be opened via the menu or map view.

Opening traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left, if necessary.
4. Select the ⚠ symbol: "Traffic Info"
   First, the traffic bulletins on the planned route are displayed. The traffic bulletins are

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

sorted in the order of their distance from the current vehicle position.

5. Select a traffic bulletin.

Additional information can be displayed for some traffic bulletins:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Additional information is displayed.
3. To exit from the menu:
   Move the controller to the left.

Traffic bulletins in the map

When the traffic bulletin map is activated, the Control Display changes to a grayscale display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins. The day/night mode is disregarded in this setting. The symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic Info map"

Symbols in the map view

Depending on the scale of the map and the location of the traffic obstruction along the route, the symbols for the traffic obstructions are displayed.

Additional information in the map view

Depending on the map scale, a traffic obstruction's length, direction and impact are displayed on the map using triangles or gray bars along the calculated route.

Filtering of traffic bulletins

You can filter which traffic bulletins are to be displayed by the system:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Select the desired categories.

Traffic bulletins of the selected categories are displayed.

- Traffic bulletins on incidents along the route are always displayed.
- For your own safety, traffic bulletins that notify you of potentially dangerous situations, such as wrong-way drivers, cannot be hidden.

Traffic bulletins during destination guidance

System response will vary depending on whether or not "Dynamic guidance" is selected, refer to page 127.

During destination guidance, traffic obstructions on the route are taken into consideration.

Information on sources of great danger, such as wrong-way drivers, is displayed regardless of the setting.

Displaying traffic obstructions

When the navigation system receives a traffic obstruction message and "Dynamic guidance" is not selected, you will be shown certain information, such as the length of the traffic congestion, when you are approx. 30 miles/50 km away from the traffic obstruction.
The last possible detour exit is indicated just before you reach it.

This information is displayed even if you have called up another application on the Control Display.

FarmaSoft.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting a detour

1. Select the symbol: "Detour".

   "Dynamic guidance" is activated for the current destination guidance.

Dynamic route planning

When "Dynamic guidance" is selected, the route will be changed automatically in the event of a traffic obstruction. The system will not point out traffic obstructions on the original route. Depending on the road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the newly calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

What to do if ...

What to do if ...

- The current position cannot be displayed?
  The position is in an unrecognized region, in a poor reception area, or the system is in the process of determining the position. Reception is generally available when you are in the open.
- The destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  A downtown area cannot be determined for the town or city that has been entered. Input any street in the selected town/city and start destination guidance.
- The destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The destination data is not contained in the navigation data. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.
- The letters for a destination cannot be selected during destination entry?
  The stored data do not contain the data of the destination. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- The map view is displayed in grayscale?
  When the traffic bulletin map is activated, the Control Display changes to a grayscale display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins.
- Voice instructions are no longer issued before intersections during destination guidance?
  The area has not been fully recorded yet, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵-۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

Entertainment

Operation of the radio, CD equipment and external audio devices as well as their tone settings are described in this chapter.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

On/off and tone

The following audio and video sources share the same control elements and adjustments:

- Radio
- CD/DVD player
- CD changer*
- Video*
- External devices, e.g. MP3 player

Controls

The audio and video sources can be controlled using the:

- Buttons near the CD/DVD player
- iDrive
- Buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10
- Programmable memory keys, refer to page 20
- Voice activation system

Buttons in the area of the CD/DVD player

1 Sound output for entertainment on/off, volume
   - Press: switch on/off
     When you switch on the unit, the last set radio station or track is played.
   - Turn: adjust volume
2 Eject the CD/DVD
3 CD/DVD drive*
4 **FM/AM**: change the radio station waveband
5 **MODE**: change the audio and video sources
6 Station scan/track search
   - Change the radio station
   - Select the track for the CD/DVD player, CD changer and certain multimedia devices

Switching on/off

To switch the entertainment audio output on or off:
Press button **1** next to the CD/DVD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

The sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes after the ignition was switched off. For sound output, switch the unit back on.

Adjusting volume

Turn button **1** next to the CD/DVD player until the desired volume is obtained.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are applied to all audio sources.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Treble, bass, balance, fader

- "Balance": left/right volume distribution

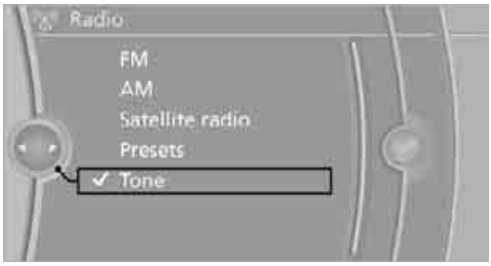
FarmaSOS.com
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

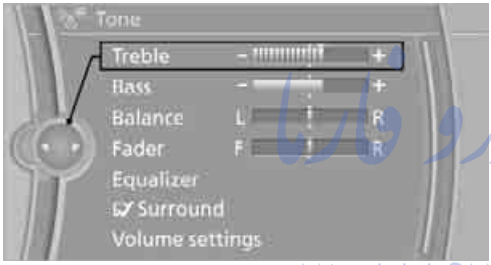
▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"



3. Select the desired tone setting.

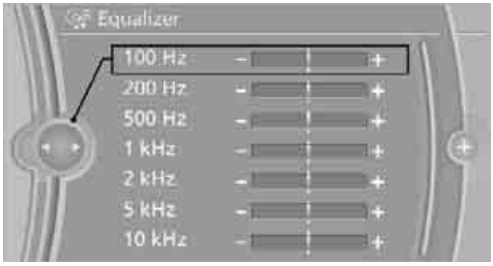


4. To adjust: turn the controller.
5. To store: press the controller.

Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Equalizer"
4. Select the desired setting.

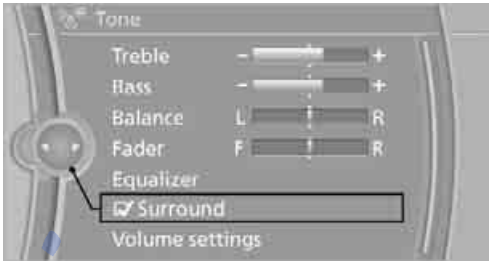


5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Multi-channel playback, surround*

You can choose between stereo and multi-channel playback, surround.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Surround"



Multi-channel playback, surround, is simulated when playing back an audio track in stereo.

Surround is automatically activated or deactivated, depending on the audio track selected.

Volume

▷ "Speed volume": adjustment of the output volume depending on the driving speed

▷ "PDC"*: volume of the PDC signal tone relative to the entertainment sound output

▷ "Gong": volume of the signal tone, e.g. for the "Fasten safety belts" reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output

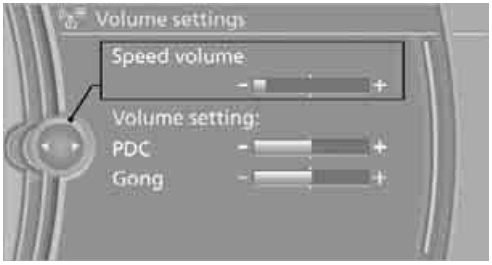
Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default setting.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Radio

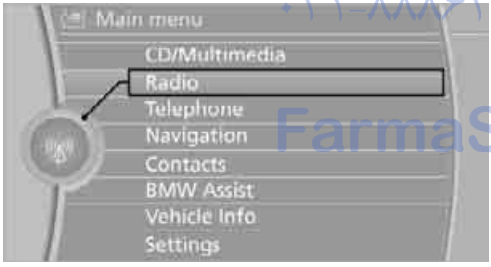
Your radio is designed for reception of the following stations:

- FM and AM
- HD Radio*
- Satellite radio*

Selecting a station

Press the button if the sound output is switched off.

1. "Radio"



2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.

The selected station is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing stations

Turn the controller and press it

or

press the button for the corresponding direction

or

press the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection using the frequency.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual"
4. Select the frequency: turn the controller.

To store the station: press the controller for an extended period.

Storing stations

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۴۶۲۰۸۵ پاسخگوی شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Select the desired station.

4. Press the controller for an extended period.
5. Select the desired memory location.

The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via programmable memory keys

You can store a station on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 20.

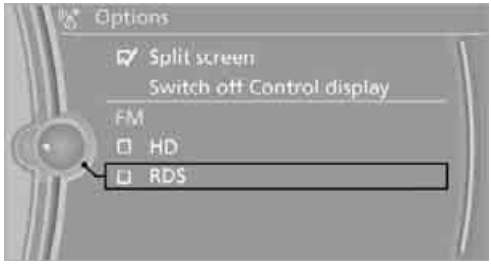
1. Select a station.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button for a longer period.

Radio Data System RDS*

In the FM waveband, additional information is transmitted via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. Where reception is poor or in the event of interference, it may take some time before the station names appear in the display.

Switching the RDS on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "RDS"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD Radio*

Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals. If a digital radio network is available, these stations can be received digitally and thus with better sound quality.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Switching digital radio reception on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "HD Radio"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD This symbol is displayed when a station is received digitally.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, playback switches between analog and digital reception. Any time shift between these two broadcasts can lead to repetitions or interruptions in the output. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.

Presets

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.

Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"

4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can also store the stations on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 20.

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Satellite radio*

General information

The channels are offered in predefined packages. The packages must be enabled by telephone.

Navigation bar overview

Symbol	Function
	Changing the list view
	Selecting a category
	Direct channel entry
	Timeshift
	Opening the favorites, opening the My Favorites category
	Managing the favorites
	Traffic Jump

The functions of the navigation bar symbols can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

Managing a subscription

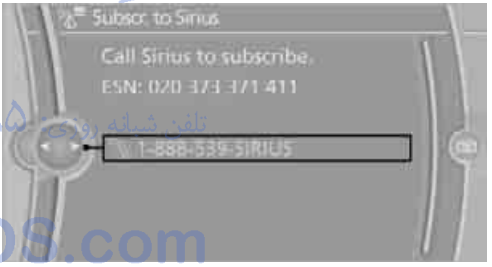
To be able to enable or unsubscribe from the channels, you must have reception. It is usually at its best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky. The channel name is displayed in the status line.

Enabling the channels

The Unsubscribed Channels category contains all disabled channels.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Categories"

4. Select the Unsubscribed Channels category.
5. Select the desired channel.
The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.
6. Select the phone number to have the channel enabled.



You can also unsubscribe from the channels via this phone number.

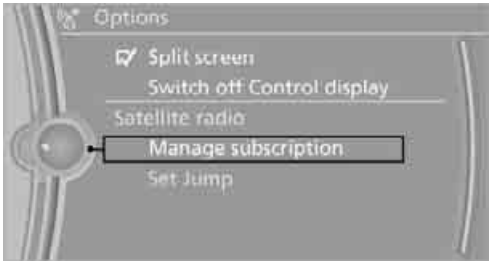
Unsubscribing from channels

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".

ParmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. "Manage subscription"



The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

5. Call Sirius to unsubscribe from the channels.

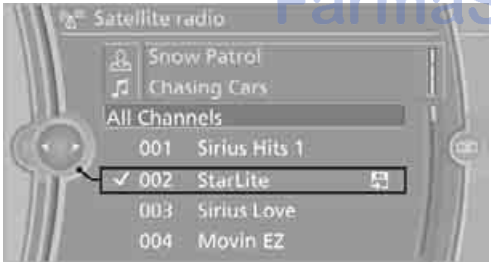
Selecting a channel

You can only listen to enabled channels.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All Channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.



Via the button in the area of the CD/DVD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.

The next channel is selected.

Via direct channel entry

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Select channel"
4. Turn the controller until the desired channel is reached and press the controller.

Storing a channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All Channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Press the controller again to confirm the highlighted channel.

7. Select the desired memory location.

The channels are stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can also store the channels on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 20.

Changing the list view

The list view changes every time the first symbol on the navigation bar is pressed.

Information on the channel is displayed.

Symbol	Function
	Channel name
	Artist
	Track

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting a category

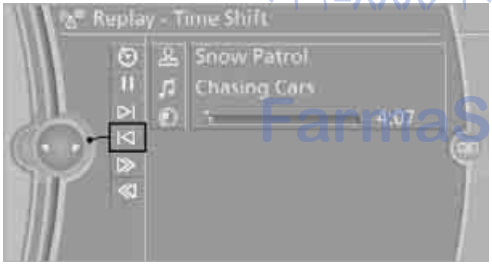
1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Categories"
4. Select the desired category.

Timeshift

Approx. one hour of the program being broadcast on the channel currently being listened to is stored in a buffer. The signal must be available. The stored audio track can be played with a delay following the live broadcast. When the buffer is full, the older tracks are overwritten. The buffer is cleared when a new channel is selected.

Opening the timeshift function

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Replay - Time Shift"
   A new panel opens.



- The red arrow shows the current playback position.
- The time difference to the live broadcast is displayed next to the buffer bar.
- If playback is live, "live" is displayed next to the buffer bar.

Timeshift menu

Symbol	Function
	Go to the live broadcast
	Playback/pause
	Next track
	Previous track
	Fast forward
	Reverse

Storing favorites

Up to 30 favorites can be stored in the favorites list. Available favorites are artist, track, game, league and team.

Storing the artist, track or game

It is only possible to store favorites that are currently being broadcast. The channel information must be available.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, select "All Channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Select the artist, track or game.

Storing the league or team

Leagues or teams can be added to the favorites from a selection list.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Manage favorites"

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. "Add sports information"

5. Select the desired league.
6. Select "Add all teams" or the desired team.

Opening the favorites

When an activated favorite is playing, the following message appears for approx. 20 seconds: "Playing favorite!".

Select "Favorites" while the message is being displayed.

The displayed favorite is played.

If there is no message, the system changes to the My Favorites category. All favorites currently being broadcast can be selected from a list.

Managing the favorites

Activating/deactivating the favorites

Favorites can be activated and deactivated globally and individually.

1. "Satellite radio"
2. "Manage favorites"
3. Select "Activate alert" or the desired favorite.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Deleting favorites

1. "Satellite radio"
2. "Manage favorites"
3. Highlight the desired favorite.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Traffic Jump

Traffic and weather information for a selected region is broadcast every few minutes.

Selecting a region

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Set Jump"
5. Select the desired region.

The region is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating/deactivating the jump

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Jump to:"

Information for the selected region is broadcast as soon as it is available.

A new panel opens.

Canceling the Traffic Jump: "Cancel".

Symbol	Meaning
	Information will be broadcast shortly.
	Information is currently being broadcast.

ایران خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Select one of the symbols to deactivate Traffic Jump.

Automatic update

About twice a year, Sirius performs an update of the channel names and positions. The update takes place automatically and may take several minutes.

Notes

- Reception may not be available in some situations, such as under certain environmental or topographic conditions. The satellite radio cannot influence this.
- The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to tall buildings or near trees, mountains or other powerful sources of radio interference.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CD/DVD player and CD changer*

CD/DVD playback

Inserting a CD/DVD

Insert the CD/DVD into the drive with the labeled side facing up. The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically.

Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files, it can take several minutes to read in the data, depending on the directory structure.

Playable formats

CD/DVD player

- DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD audio (video part only), DVD video
- CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA, VCD, SVCD
- Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC

CD changer*

- CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA

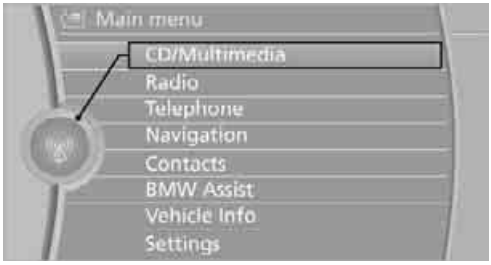
Starting playback

Via iDrive

Fill the CD/DVD magazine and insert it, refer to page 151.

To start playback if a CD is already located in the player or changer:

1. "CD/Multimedia"



2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD:

Ejecting a CD/DVD

Press the button next to the CD/DVD player. The CD/DVD emerges slightly from the drive.

Symbol	Function
	CD/DVD player
1...6	CD changer

Audio playback

Selecting a track using the button

Press the button for the appropriate direction as often as necessary until the desired track is reached.

FarnaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting a track using iDrive

Audio CDs

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the desired track to begin playback.

CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files*

Depending on the data, some letters and numbers of the CD/DVD may not be displayed correctly.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the directory, if necessary.
   To change to a higher level directory: move the controller to the left.

5. Select a track and press the controller.

Displaying information about the track*

If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- Artist
- Album title
- Number of tracks on the CD/DVD
- Track file name

Random play sequence

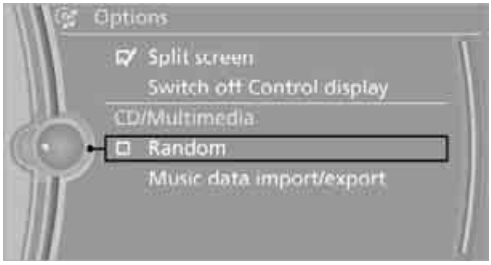
The tracks on the current CD/DVD are played once in random sequence.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Open "Options".

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

5. "Random"



CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files: the directories and the tracks contained therein are played back in random sequence.

Random mode is switched off when the audio source is changed or the ignition is switched off.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Automatic repeat*

Selected tracks, directories or CDs/DVDs are repeated automatically.

Video playback*

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on your DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

Starting playback

For your own safety, the video image is only displayed up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h, and in some market-specific versions only with the parking brake applied.

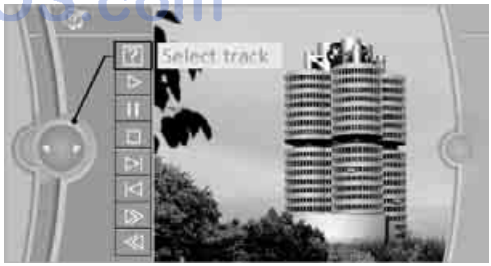
DVD video

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.
4. DVD "DVD menu"

5. Start the DVD via the DVD menu.

VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD/DVD with video content.
4. "Select track"



5. Select the desired track.

The CD/DVD is started.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Video menu

To open the Video menu:

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Press the controller when "Back" is displayed.

The Video menu is displayed:

Symbol	Function
DVD	Open the DVD menu*
▷	Starting playback
❙❙	Pause
□	Stop
▷|	Next chapter/next track
|◁	Previous chapter/previous track
▷▷	Fast forward
◁◁	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the Video menu.
2. DVD "DVD menu"
   The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.

▷ To select menu items: move and press the controller.

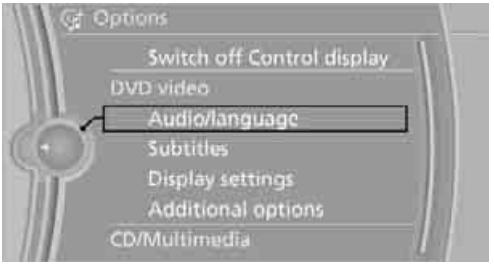
▷ To change to the Video menu: turn the controller and select "Back".

DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; refer also to the information on your DVD.

Language*

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Audio/language"



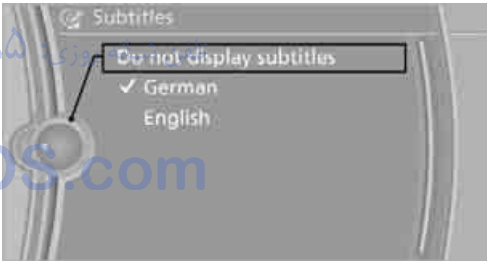
4. Select the desired language.

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

Subtitles*

Subtitles can be selected if they are contained on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Subtitles"
4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".



Brightness, contrast, color

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display settings"

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

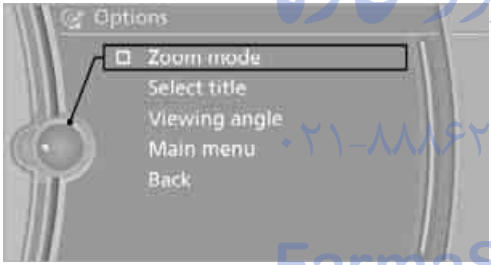
4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Color"

5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed, and then press the controller.

Zoom

Display the video image on the full screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Zoom mode"



Selecting track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Select title"
5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1. "Select track"
2. Select the desired track.

Camera angle*

The camera angle depends on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Viewing angle"
5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

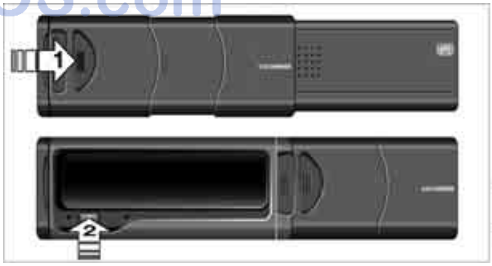
These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

CD changer*

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is behind the left side panel in the cargo area.

Removing the CD magazine

To insert or remove CDs from the CD magazine, you must first remove it from the CD changer:



1. Push the cover to one side, arrow **1**.
2. Press the button, arrow **2**.
   The CD magazine is ejected.

Push the magazine back in after at least 2 seconds have passed so that the inserted CDs can be read in again.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

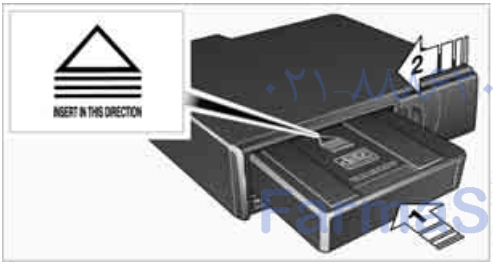
Inserting/removing CDs from the CD magazine

When loading CDs into or removing them from the CD magazine, hold them at their edges and do not touch the reflective signal-sensing area.

Inserting CDs:
Insert one CD per compartment with the labeled side up.

Removing CDs:
Pull out the desired compartment and take out the CD.

Inserting the CD magazine



Insert the CD magazine all the way in the direction of arrow **1** and close the cover, arrow **2**.

The CD changer automatically reads in the loaded CDs and is then ready for operation.

Notes

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged; otherwise, severe eye damage can result.
Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat build-up and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. CD singles; otherwise, the CDs or the adapter might jam and no longer eject.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}; otherwise, the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check if it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this may be due to one of the following reasons.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, for example, inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or old age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the top, with a pen designed for this purpose.

Damage

Avoid leaving fingerprints, as well as dust, scratches or moisture on the CDs/DVDs.
Keep CDs/DVDs in protective sleeves or cases.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures above 122 °F /50 °C, nor to high humidity levels or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often copy-protected by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/

FarmSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered U.S. patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision, media with this protection may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Music collection

Storing music

The music tracks from CDs, DVDs and USB devices can be stored in the music collection in the vehicle and played from there.

- Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format when they are stored. If available, information on the album, such as the artist, is stored as well.
- CD/DVD or USB device with compressed audio files: the entire content of the CD/DVD or the USB device is stored in the vehicle as an album. After storing, the tracks and directories can be deleted individually. Files are only stored in the WMA, MP3, and AAC formats.
  Tracks with DRM copy protection can be stored in the vehicle but cannot be played back.

Regularly back up the music data; otherwise, it could be lost if there is a fault on the hard disk.◀

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote® is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

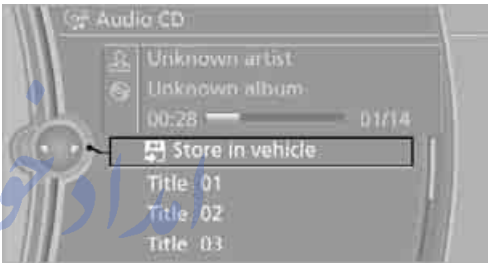
CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773; #6,161,132; #6,230,192; #6,230,207; #6,240,459; #6,330,593; and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Storing files from CDs/DVDs

CDs/DVDs can only be stored from the CD/DVD player.

1. Insert a CD/DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"
4. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"



The music collection is displayed.
The tracks are stored and played back in sequence from the music collection.

Observe the following during the storage process:
Do not switch back to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player; otherwise, the storage process will be interrupted.
You can switch to the other audio sources without interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD can also be called up, if they have been stored already.

Interrupting storage

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

FarnaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Storing..."

4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue storing"

Storage of the CD continues at the beginning of the track at which storage was interrupted.

Album information

During storage, information such as the name of the artist is stored with the track, if this information is available in the vehicle database or on the CD.

To update the database, contact your service center.

Storing from a USB device

To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

- Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.
- Unsuitable devices: USB hard drive, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone.

Music from a USB device can be stored only via the USB interface in the glove compartment.◀

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Music data import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"

Playing music

Music search

All tracks for which additional information has been stored can be accessed by the music search. Tracks without additional information can be called up via the corresponding album.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Select the desired category.

5. To select the desired entry:
   - ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired entry.

   or
   - ▷ select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select additional categories if desired.
   The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order.
   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

Restarting the music search

"New search"

Music search by voice*

For instructions on the voice activation system, refer to page 22.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Music search‹
3. Open the desired category, e.g. ›Select artist‹.
4. Say the desired entry in the list.
5. Select additional categories if desired.

To select a track directly:

›Title ...‹

Say the voice command and the name of the desired track in one sentence.

Current playback

The list of tracks that was generated last by the music search or the album selected last.

1. "Current playback"

2. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Top 50

List of the 50 most frequently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Albums

All stored albums, listed in order of their storage dates. Symbols indicate the format.

Symbol	Format
	Audio CD
	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

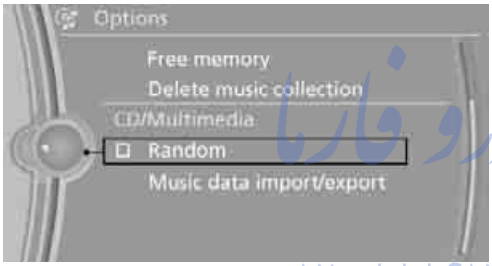
Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed. The first track is played automatically, if possible.

4. To select tracks, change directories if needed. To go up one level in the directory, move the controller to the left.

Random play sequence

All tracks of the selection are played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"



Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is unknown, it can be changed later.

An album cannot be renamed while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename album"

6. Select the letters individually.

Deleting an album

An album cannot be deleted while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting a track or directory

A track cannot be deleted while it is being played back.

A directory cannot be deleted while a track from that directory is being played back.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track".

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

FarmaSOS.com
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

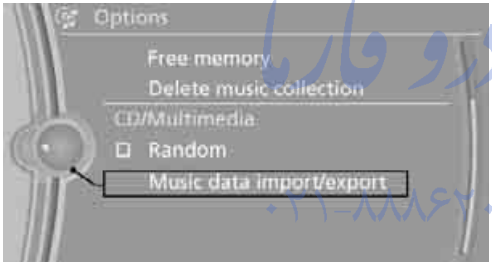
Music collection

Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB medium. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours. Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Start the engine.
2. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Open "Options".
6. "Music data import/export"



7. "Backup music on USB"

Restoring the music collection in the vehicle

When storing from the USB device, the music collection existing in the vehicle is replaced.◀

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

External devices

AUX-IN port

You can connect an external audio device, for instance an MP3 player, and play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system. You can adjust the tone using iDrive.

Connecting

Lift up the center armrest.

Connection for audio playback:
TRS connector 1/8 in/3.5 mm

To play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system, connect the headset or line-out port of the external device to the AUX-IN port.

Starting audio playback

Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track. Operate the system on the audio device.

Via iDrive

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If applicable, "External devices"
3. "AUX front"

Adjusting the volume

The volume of the sound output depends on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If applicable, "External devices"
3. "AUX front"
4. "Volume"

5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

USB audio interface*/ extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone*

It is possible to connect external audio devices/ mobile phones. They can be operated via iDrive. Sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Options for connecting external devices

- Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g. MP3 player, USB flash drive, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.
- Connection via snap-in adapter*, refer to page 176, when equipped with additional connection of music player in the mobile phone: Apple iPhone/mobile phones. Playback is possible only if no audio device/ mobile phone is connected to the USB audio interface.

Due to the large number of different audio devices/mobile phones available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio device/ mobile phone is operable on the vehicle.

FarnaSoft.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Ask about suitable audio devices/mobile phones at your BMW center.

Audio files

Standard audio formats, e.g. MP3, WMA, WAV (PCM) and AAC, and playlists in the M3U format can be played.

Connecting via USB audio interface

Lift up the center armrest.

1 AUX-IN port for audio playback: TRS connector 1/8 in/3.5 mm

2 USB interface

Apple iPod/iPhone

To connect the device, use the special cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone, available from your BMW center. The cable adapter is required for a flawless connection.

Connect the Apple iPod/iPhone with the AUX-IN port and USB interface **1** using the cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone.
The Apple iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB audio interface.

USB device

When connecting the device use a flexible adapter cable, to protect the USB interface and your USB device against physical damage.◀

Connect the USB device to connector **2**, using a flexible adapter cable.

After the device is connected for the first time, the information on all tracks (e.g. artist, type of music) and the playlists are transferred from the USB device to the vehicle. This procedure may take some time. The duration depends on the USB device and the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.

Information from up to four USB devices can be stored in the vehicle, or a total of about 16,000 tracks.

If a fifth USB device is connected or if more than 16,000 tracks are stored, information on existing tracks may be deleted.

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.◀

Starting audio playback

If the audio device has a device name, the name is displayed.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
The name of the audio device may appear.

Playback begins with the first track. When an Apple iPhone is connected via the snap-in adapter and an audio device is connected to the AUX-IN port at the same time, the audio signal of the AUX-IN port is played.

Information about the track

If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- Artist
- Album title
- Number of tracks
- Track file name

FarnaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Track search

You can call up the tracks using the playlists and information. With USB devices you can also call up tracks using the file directory.

Selection is possible via:

- ▷ Playback lists
- ▷ Information: type of music, artist, album, title
- ▷ Additionally for USB devices: file directory, composer

Track titles are displayed if they have been stored in the Latin alphabet.

Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
   The name of the audio device may appear.
4. Select the desired category, "Genre", "Artist".

   All entries are displayed in a list. The "A-Z search" can be used to find specific entries.
   - ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired entry.
   - ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
5. Select additional categories if desired.
   The tracks found are listed. Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
6. "Start play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"

Playback lists

To open playback lists.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Playlists"

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Current playback"

Random play sequence

You can play the tracks in the selected list in random order, e.g. all tracks of a single artist.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Notes

Do not expose the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g. very high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the audio device. Otherwise, the audio device may become damaged, which could compromise safety while driving.◀

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates greater than 256 KBit/s, the files may not play back correctly in every case.

Notes on connecting

- ▷ The connected audio device is supplied with a current of max. 500 mA, if the device

FarmaSoft.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

supports this. Therefore, do not connect the device to the power socket in the vehicle.

- Do not forcibly connect the plug to the USB interface.
- Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- Do not connect USB hard drives.
- Do not use the USB audio interface to charge external devices.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Communications

This chapter describes how to use the telephone, BMW Assist and TeleService.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Telephone*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full preparation package mobile phone. After pairing a suitable mobile phone with the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via the iDrive, the buttons on the steering wheel or using voice commands*.

Once a mobile phone has been paired with your vehicle, it is automatically recognized as soon as it is inside the vehicle while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. You can store the pairing data for up to four mobile phones simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected at the same time, the mobile phone last paired can be operated via the vehicle.

Using the telephone inside the vehicle

Using the snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a holder for mobile phones, allows you to charge the mobile phone's battery and connect the mobile phone to your vehicle's outside antenna. This ensures better network reception and consistent reproduction quality. Please contact your BMW center to find out for which mobile phones there are snap-in adapters available.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

Only make entries when the traffic situation allows you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Suitable mobile phones

Please ask your BMW center which mobile phones with Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package and which mobile phones are compatible with the snap-in adapter. By virtue of their particular software versions, these mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual. Malfunctions may occur with other mobile phones.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone using:

- Buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10
- iDrive, refer to page 16
- Voice commands*, refer to page 173
- Programmable memory keys, refer to page 20

Avoid operating a mobile phone recognized by the vehicle via the mobile phone's keypad; otherwise, malfunctions may result.

Start-up

Pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

- Compatible mobile phone: the mobile phone is supported by the full preparation package mobile phone. You can obtain information on the Internet at: www.bmw.com/bluetooth
- The mobile phone is ready to operate.

FarnaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

- Bluetooth has been activated in the vehicle, refer to page 168, and on the mobile phone.
- Depending on the mobile phone, certain settings may be necessary on the mobile phone, e.g. via the following menu items:
  - Bluetooth switched on
  - Connection must be allowed without requiring further confirmation
  - Reconnection
- Depending on the mobile phone type, the power-saving mode setting, for example, may result in a paired mobile phone not being detected by the vehicle.
- For pairing purposes, define any 4 to 16-digit number as a Bluetooth passkey, e.g. 25081107. A long and complex number offers the best protection against unauthorized access. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required after pairing is successful.
- The ignition is switched on.

Pair the mobile phone with the vehicle only when the car is stationary, to avoid endangering the car's occupants and other road users by being distracted.◀

ایران خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Switch on ignition

1. Insert remote control all the way into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on ignition without operating the brake or clutch or pressing the start/stop button.

Preparation via iDrive

3. "Telephone"
4. "Bluetooth"
5. "Add new phone"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

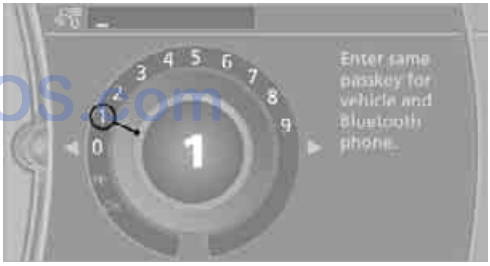
Preparation via the mobile phone

6. Further steps must be carried out with the mobile phone and vary depending on the model. Please refer to your mobile phone's operating instructions, e.g. under the topics of Searching for a Bluetooth device, Linking or Pairing.
   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.
7. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

Pairing

Depending on your mobile phone, you will see messages, first on the mobile phone display or on the iDrive, requesting you to enter the same Bluetooth passkey previously determined by you.

8. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
   Depending on the mobile phone, you will have approx. 30 seconds to enter your Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and the Control Display.



If the pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

Following the initial pairing

- The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within 2 minutes if the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to the vehicle. This transmis-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

sion is dependent on your mobile phone, refer to the operating instructions of the mobile phone if necessary, and can take several minutes.

- Four mobile phones can be paired.
- Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g. authorization or a secure connection, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

If not all phone book entries are displayed:

- Transfer all phone book entries from the SIM card to the mobile phone, if necessary.
- Phone book entries with special characters may not be displayed.

Checks to perform if pairing is unsuccessful

- Is the mobile phone supported by the mobile phone preparation package? You can obtain information on the Internet at: www.bmw.com/bluetooth
- Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and vehicle match? The same Bluetooth passkey must be entered on the mobile phone's display and via iDrive.
- Did it take you more than 30 seconds to enter the Bluetooth passkey? Then repeat the pairing procedure.
- Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone? If so, delete the connections with other devices on the mobile phone.
- Is the mobile phone no longer responding? Switch the mobile phone off and on or briefly disconnect the power supply.
- Repeat the pairing procedure.
- If all items on the list have been checked and the mobile phone still cannot be paired, please contact Customer Relations.

Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth"
3. Select the desired mobile phone.

Unpairing the mobile phone from the vehicle

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth"
3. Highlight the mobile phone that is to be unpaired.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Remove phone from list"

The unpaired mobile phone is deleted from the list.
The phone book entries and the lists of stored phone numbers are deleted as well.

Activating/deactivating the Bluetooth link

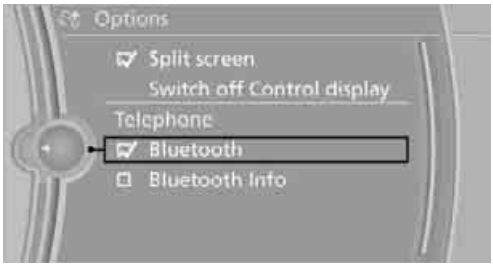
The use of Bluetooth technology is not permitted in all countries. Observe all applicable local regulations. Temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone, if necessary.
If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you can no longer operate the mobile phone via the vehicle, and other devices with a Bluetooth interface

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

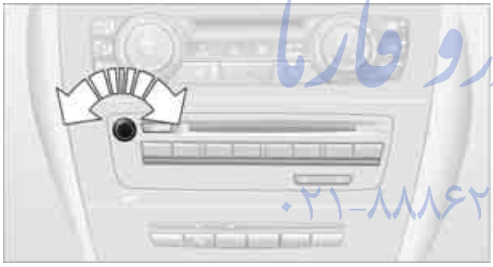
can be used in combination with the mobile phone, e.g. a laptop.◀

To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth"



Adjusting the volume



Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions using iDrive:

- Accepting/rejecting calls
- Dialing phone numbers
- Selecting phone numbers from the phone book
- Selecting stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of received calls
- Ending a call

When the ignition is switched off or in radio readiness, e.g. after taking the remote control out of the ignition lock, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for several minutes.

Voice quality

If the person you are talking to is having difficulties understanding you, this may be due to excessive background noise. The full preparation package mobile phone can compensate for these noises to a certain extent. To optimize voice quality during a call, we recommend that you:

- Reduce background noise, e.g. by closing the windows, reducing air flow from the automatic climate control or pointing the open front air vents downward.
- Reduce the volume of the hands-free system.

Requirements

- The mobile phone's pairing data are stored by the vehicle and the mobile phone is operational.
- The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- The mobile phone is recognized by the vehicle.

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

or

"Accept"

Rejecting a call

"Reject"

The caller is diverted to your mailbox if the mailbox was activated.

Ending a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. Select an active call.

Dialing phone numbers

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select this symbol to establish the connection

or

press the button on the steering wheel.

The phone number can also be entered using voice commands*, refer to page 173.

For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are talking to, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your provider.

Calls with multiple parties

You can switch between calls and combine two calls to a single conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and the service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function may need to be enabled by the service provider, and the mobile phone may have to be set up accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an active call, you will hear a call waiting signal.

"Accept"

The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

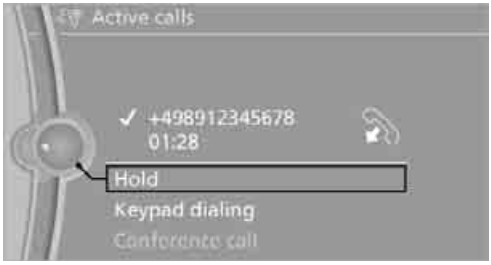
Establish another call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Hold"



The existing call is put on hold.

4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, toggling

▷ Active call: indicated by a red handset

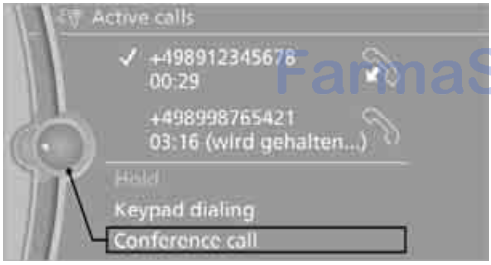
▷ Call on hold: indicated by a green handset

To switch to the call on hold, select this handset.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"



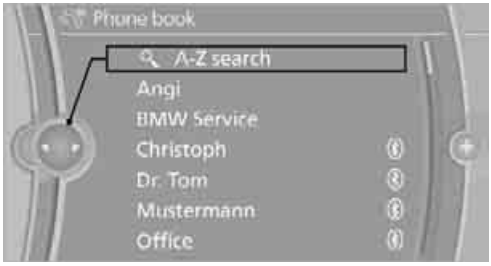
When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended.

Phone book

The phone book accesses the contacts* and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

All contacts with a phone number are displayed. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts.



Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone

Calling a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
   A connection is established immediately if calling contacts with one phone number.
   For contacts with several phone numbers:
2. Select the desired phone number.
   The connection is established.

Editing a contact

The entries in the contacts can be changed. When a contact from the mobile phone is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

Redialing

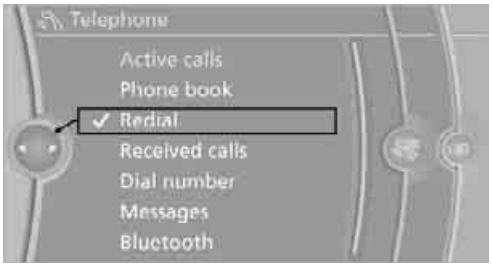
The eight phone numbers dialed last are stored.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Dialing the number via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"



3. Select the desired entry.
   The connection is established.

Deleting entries

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

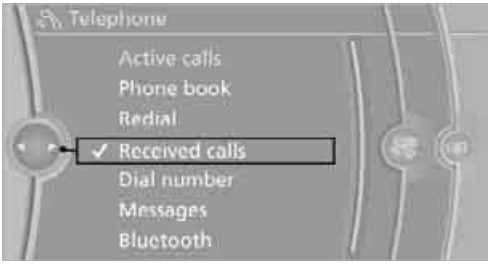
Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store in vehicle"

Received calls

The 20 calls that were last received are displayed.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"



Dialing a number

Select an entry.
The connection is established.

Deleting entries

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store contact"

Messages

Various types of messages can be displayed:

- My Info messages from the BMW Assist portal
- Messages from the BMW Concierge service

Displaying messages

1. "Telephone"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired message.

امداد خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

My Info

To start destination guidance:

1. Select the message that contains the desired destination.
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

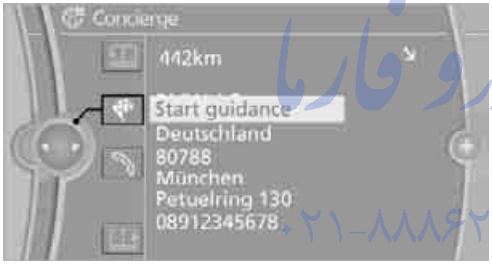
To dial the number in the message:

1. Select the message that contains the desired number.
2. "Call"

Messages from the concierge service

To use the address in destination guidance*:

1. Select the message.
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".



3. Start destination guidance, if necessary.

To dial a phone number:

1. Select the message.
2. "Call"

To save an address:

1. Select the message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Deleting messages

1. Select the message to be deleted.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete message"

Switching between mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to hands-free system*

You can continue ongoing calls outside of the vehicle's Bluetooth range via the hands-free system as long as the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically switches to hands-free mode.

With mobile phones that do not automatically switch to hands-free mode:

Depending on the type of mobile phone you are using, it may be possible to continue the conversation via the hands-free system. Refer to the display on your mobile phone and/or your mobile phone's operating instructions.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

If you are making a call via the hands-free system, it may be possible to continue the call via the mobile phone, depending on your mobile phone model. Refer to the display on your mobile phone and/or your mobile phone's operating instructions.

Alternatively, you can deactivate the Bluetooth link, refer to page 168.

Depending on the type of mobile phone you are using, it may occur that calls are switched from the hands-free system to the mobile phone if reception of the wireless network is poor.

Operation by voice commands*

The concept

- You can operate your mobile phone without having to take a hand off the steering wheel.
- Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands. The voice activation system supports you by making announcements and asking questions.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

Requirements

The same prerequisites apply as for operation via iDrive, refer to page 169.

Saying commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
   A sound signal indicates that you can say commands.
2. Say the command.

Ending/canceling operation by voice commands

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or

›Cancel‹.

In dialogs not involving voice commands, i.e. when you are speaking only text, e.g. a name, canceling is possible only via the button on the steering wheel.

Having the possible commands read aloud

The system recognizes specific commands that must be pronounced exactly word for word. You can have the possible commands for any function read aloud to you:

›Help‹.

Digits from zero to nine are recognized.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Using alternative commands

Often there is more than a single command to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

Example: dialing phone numbers

To start the dialog:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

You say	Voice control response
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
e.g. ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on your equipment version: ››123 456 7890. Continue ?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

Adjusting the volume of the instructions

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:

Turn the button during an instruction.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
Farma808.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone numbers

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting phone numbers

›Delete‹

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

Redialing

To redial the phone number dialed last:

›Redial‹

Voice phone book

A separate voice phone book is needed for operation using voice commands.

The entries must be entered using voice commands and are separate from the memory in the mobile phone. In this case, phone numbers stored on the mobile phone cannot be called up or saved there using voice commands. Up to 50 entries can be set up. An entry always consists of a name and a phone number.

Creating and editing a voice phone book

To store an entry:

An entry always consists of a name and a phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
2. Say the name.
   Saying the name for the voice phone book should not take longer than approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number after being prompted to do so by the system.
4. To save the phone number:
   ›Save‹.

To delete an entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
   The dialog for deleting an entry opens.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

To delete all entries:

›Delete phone book‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phone book‹.
   The dialog for deleting the phone book opens.
2. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the query again with ›Yes‹.

To listen to and select the entries:

You can have all entries in your voice phone book read aloud in the order in which they were entered and select a specific entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phonebook‹.
   The dialog for reading the phone book opens.
2. Say ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Notes

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection. Use the SOS button* instead, refer to page 215.

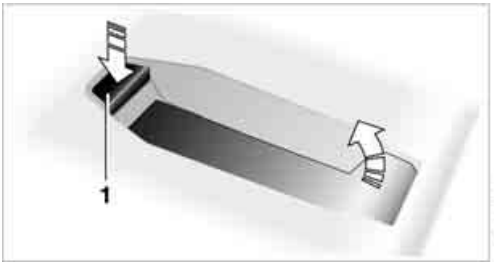
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, bear in mind the following:

- Say the commands, numbers and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- Keep the doors, windows, glass sunroof* or convertible top* closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

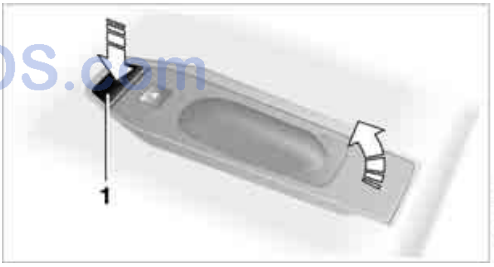
Inserting/removing the snap-in adapter*

1. Press button **1** and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter in the front and press it downward until it engages.

To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press button **1**.



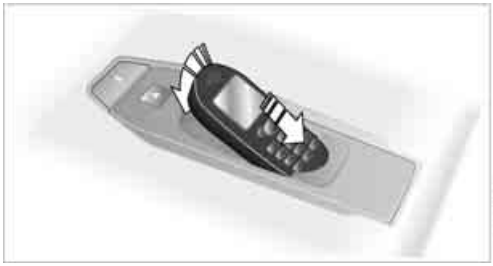
Inserting mobile phone

1. If applicable, remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector so that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.
2. With its buttons facing upward, slide the mobile phone up towards the electrical con-

امداد خودرو فارس
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsiSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

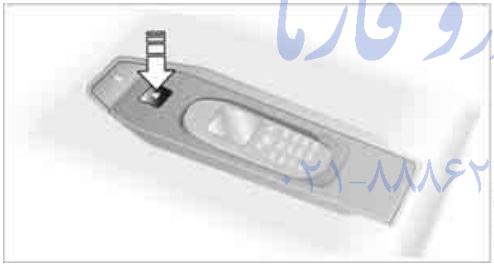
tact points and press it downward until it engages.



The mobile phone's battery is charged as soon as the vehicle is in radio readiness or the steering is unlocked.

To conserve vehicle battery power, you should avoid using the mobile phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

Removing mobile phone



Press the button.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

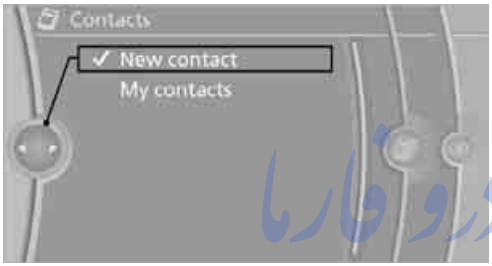
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Contacts*

You can create and edit contacts. The contacts from the mobile phone* are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. The addresses can be used as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"



3. If the entry fields are still filled with the previous entries, select "Delete input fields".
4. To fill in the entry fields: Select the symbol next to the entry field.

5. Enter the text.

   If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, it is only possible to enter addresses that are contained in the navigation data in the vehicle. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.◀
6. If applicable, "Store"
7. "Store contact in vehicle"

Specifying a contact as the home address

A contact can be stored as a home address. It is placed at the top of "My contacts".

1. Create a new contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as home address"

When the home address is deleted, only the content of the home address entry is deleted and not the entry itself.

My contacts

A list of all contacts in the vehicle and on the mobile phone*.

Displaying contacts

"My contacts"

All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z

FarmaSoft.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

search is offered. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone*

Displaying the detailed view*

Select the desired contact.
All fields that have been filled in for that contact are displayed.

Selecting a contact as the navigation destination

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired address.

Contacts from the mobile phone* may contain addresses that do not match the navigation data contained in the vehicle and thus cannot be used for destination guidance. In this case: Manually correct the address.

Checking the address as a destination*

An address that is to be used for destination guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. An address that is stored on the mobile phone can be matched to the navigation data.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address, if necessary.

After an address has been corrected, the contact can be stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

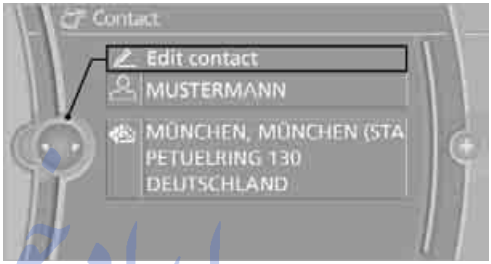
Dialing a phone number*

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired phone number.

The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. "Edit contact"



4. Change the entries.
5. Move the controller to the left.
6. "Yes"

If a contact from the mobile phone* is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone* cannot be deleted.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

ایران خودرو فارما
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides a number of different services. For example, the position data of the vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center when an Emergency Request* is sent.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the contract individually agreed upon.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist services will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after a new contract has been signed.

Requirements

- The installed BMW Assist system is logged in to a wireless communications network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine its current position.
- To activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- The BMW Assist service contract was signed with your BMW center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. The service must have been fully enabled.
- BMW Assist is activated.

Services offered

- Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection to the BMW Assist Response Center is established. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- Automatic Collision Notification: under certain conditions, a connection to the BMW Assist Response Center is established after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance* can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle data and position data are transmitted during this call.
- Customer Relations: connection to Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.
- TeleService: data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your BMW center, either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- Remote Door Unlock: the BMW Assist Response Center provides assistance if, for example, the remote control is not available and the vehicle needs to be opened.
- Stolen Vehicle Recovery: after you report to the police that your vehicle was stolen, the BMW Assist Response Center can determine its position.
- In addition, the optional Convenience Plan offers a concierge service and information on route planning, the traffic situation and weather. Using Critical Calling, a limited number of calls can be made via the BMW Assist Response Center, for example if the mobile phone is not available or discharged. Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.

TeleService*

TeleService supports communication with your BMW center.

- Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the BMW center. In this way, the BMW center can plan its work

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.

- In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance*.
- The service varies by country.
- Connection may incur charges.
- Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

- BMW Assist is activated.
- Wireless reception is available.
- The engine is running.

Concierge service*

When you call the BMW Assist Concierge service, you can obtain information about, for example, restaurants, emergency pharmacy services, gas stations or hotels, as well as receive the corresponding telephone numbers and addresses.

You can then dial a phone number directly or use an address for destination guidance*.

Starting the concierge service

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Concierge"

3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established to the BMW Concierge service.

You are connected to an employee of the BMW Concierge service to obtain the required information. You can then have the phone number and address sent to you and, for example, use it for destination guidance in the navigation system. Many hotels can be booked directly through the BMW Assist Concierge service. When an information message is received, a list of the received messages is displayed automatically. Open the message via the message list, refer to page 172.

Roadside Assistance

You can call BMW Roadside Assistance* should you require help in the event of a breakdown.

Starting Roadside Assistance

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or BMW TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"

The Roadside Assistance number is displayed.

3. Select the number. If a mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to BMW Roadside Assistance.

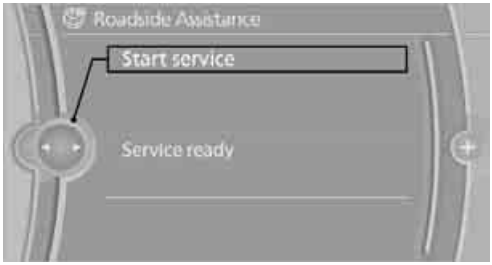
Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or BMW TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Start service"



TeleService Diagnosis*

TeleService Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that are important for vehicle diagnosis. TeleService Diagnosis can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and termination of the voice connection.

TeleService Help*

TeleService Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission. TeleService Help can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and termination of the voice connection.

Starting TeleService Help

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. The engine is running.
4. "TeleService Help"

After completion of TeleService Help, a voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

Activating BMW Assist*

If the services included in a valid BMW Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

1. Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. "Activate BMW Assist"

Activation may take several minutes. If another menu is opened, activation continues running in the background.

BMW Search*

BMW Search is an online portal that makes certain services available for use in your vehicle, e.g. information on restaurants along your route.

License conditions:

This product contains NetFront Browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd., in Japan and other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Requirements

- Subscription to the optional Convenience Plan.
- The vehicle is located within wireless network coverage.
- The date setting on the Control Display is current.

FarmaSOS.com

Starting BMW Search

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "BMW Search"

3. Select "OK", if necessary.

The BMW Search start page is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Using BMW Search

To select and display content:

- ▷ Turn the controller to highlight an element.
- ▷ Press the controller to display an element.

Opening the start page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Home"

Loading a new page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Reload"

Canceling

1. Open "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

Customer Relations

At a glance

Contact Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling Customer Relations

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or BMW TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"
3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established to Customer Relations.

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or BMW TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. If the vehicle is equipped with the mobile phone preparation package, a voice connection is established.

Service Request*

At a glance

You can send a request to your BMW center to arrange a service appointment. The TeleService data is transmitted during a Service Request. If possible, your BMW center will establish contact with you.

Starting a Service Request

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Service Request"
3. "Start service"

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Automatic Service Request*

The TeleService data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your BMW center prior to the service deadline. If possible, the center will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

You can check when the BMW center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Data transfer*

The status of the data transfer is displayed.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Data transfer"

Service status*

Displaying available services

Display of all services available in the vehicle. This function can be called up via "Options".

1. "BMW Assist"
2. Open any menu.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Service status"
5. "Available services"

Activating BMW Assist

If the services included in a BMW Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

"Activate BMW Assist"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Mobility

This section helps you maintain your car's mobility by supplying important information on vital topics including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and roadside assistance.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

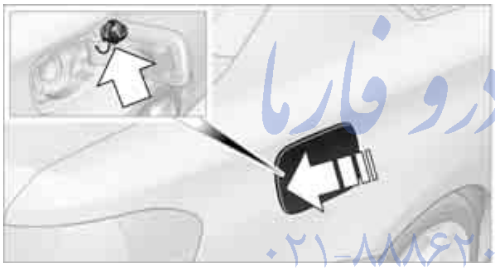
Refueling

Always switch off the engine before refueling; otherwise, fuel cannot be added to the tank and a message will be displayed.◀

Take all precautionary measures and observe all applicable regulations when handling fuel. Do not carry any spare fuel containers in your vehicle. They can develop a leak and cause an explosion or cause a fire in the event of an accident.◀

Fuel filler flap

Opening



1. Open the fuel filler flap. To do so, lightly press the rear edge.
2. Turn the gas cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the gas cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Closing

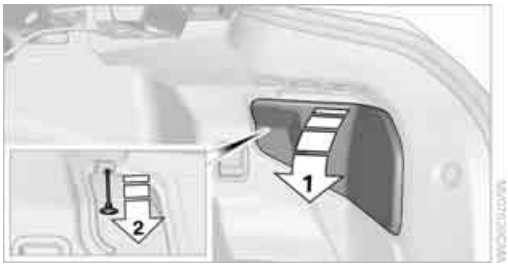
Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

Do not pinch the band attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape. A message will be displayed if the gas cap is loose or missing.◀

Manually releasing the fuel filler flap

In the event of a malfunction, you can release the fuel filler flap manually:

1. Remove the cover from the right-hand sidewall of the cargo area.



2. Pull the button with the fuel pump symbol down.
The fuel filler flap is released.

Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels, follow the safety instructions provided at filling stations; otherwise, there is a risk of personal injury or property damage.◀

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid lifting the filler nozzle while filling the tank, as that would lead to

- premature pump shutoff
- reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 14 US gallons/53 liters, including the reserve capacity of 2.1 US gallons/8 liters.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Fuel specifications

Do not fill the tank with leaded fuel, as this would cause permanent damage to the

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

catalytic converter.
Do not fill the tank with E85, i.e. fuel containing 85 % ethanol, nor with FlexFuel. Otherwise, the engine and fuel supply system will be damaged.◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.

However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI. The minimum AKI Rating is:

- ▷ 128i: 87
- ▷ 135i: 89

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

⚠ Do not use any gasoline below the specified minimum fuel grade. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10 % ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8 % oxygen by weight, that is, 15 % MTBE or 3 % methanol plus an equivalent amount of cosolvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

⚠ The use of poor-quality fuels may result in drivability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

BMW recommends BP fuels

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressures

Information for your safety

It is not merely the tires' service life, but also driving comfort and, to a great extent, driving safety that depend on the condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it, if necessary: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. If you fail to observe this precaution you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that can not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident. Do not drive with deflated, i.e. flat tires, except when using run-flat tires. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to loss of control over the vehicle.◀

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 79, or reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 77.◀

Inflation pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes approved and tire brands recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressures, observe the following:

- Tire sizes for your vehicle
- Load conditions
- Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h and to achieve optimum driving comfort, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the columns for traveling speeds up to a maximum of 100 mph or 160 km/h.

These tire inflation pressures can also be found on the driver's side door post when the driver's door is open.

The maximum permissible speed for these tire pressures is 100 mph or 160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed; otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Tire inflation pressures for driving above 100 mph or 160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph or 160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the columns for traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph or 160 km/h. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits; otherwise, violations of the laws could occur.

امداد خودرو فارس
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarsaOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Coupe: tire inflation pressures for the 128i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
195/55 R 16 87 H M+S	32/220	38/260	35/240	42/290
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	32/220	35/240	35/240	42/290
Front: 205/50 R 17 89 V	32/220	-	36/250	-
Rear: 225/45 R 17 91 V	-	35/240	-	44/300
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	32/220	-	35/240	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	39/270	-	42/290

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 225.

Coupe: tire inflation pressures for the 135i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	33/230	36/250	38/260	42/290
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	36/250	-	38/260	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	39/270	-	42/290

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 225.

امداد خودرو فارما
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

Convertible: tire inflation pressures for the 128i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
without Sport Package				
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S	32/220	35/240	32/220	39/270
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	32/220	38/260	35/240	42/290
Front: 205/50 R 17 89 V	32/220	-	35/240	-
Rear: 225/45 R 17 91 V	-	36/250	-	41/280
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	35/240	-	35/240	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	41/280	-	41/280
with Sport Package				
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S	32/220	35/240	32/220	39/270
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	32/220	38/260	35/240	42/290
Front: 205/50 R 17 89 V	32/220	-	39/270	-
Rear: 225/45 R 17 91 V	-	36/250	-	46/320
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	35/240	-	38/260	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	41/280	-	45/310

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 225.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Convertible: tire inflation pressures for the 135i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
without Sport Package				
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	32/220	38/260	36/250	42/290
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	39/270	-	39/270	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	41/280	-	41/280
with Sport Package				
205/50 R 17 89 H M+S	32/220	38/260	36/250	42/290
Front: 215/40 R 18 85 Y	39/270	-	39/270	-
Rear: 245/35 R 18 88 Y	-	41/280	-	45/310

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 225.

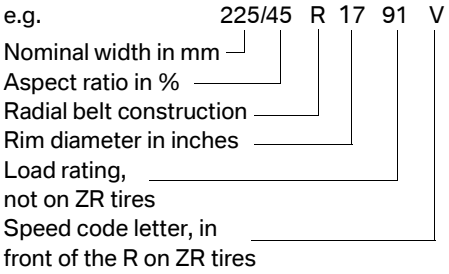
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size



Speed code letter

Q = up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph or 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph or 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph or 240 km/h

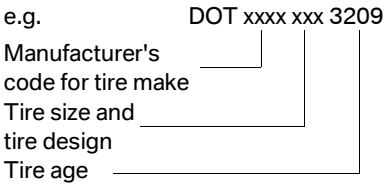
W = up to 167 mph or 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph or 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the US Department of Transportation.

DOT code:



Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding: DOT ... 3209 means that the tire was manufactured in week 32 of 2009.

BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – run-flat tires

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 196.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

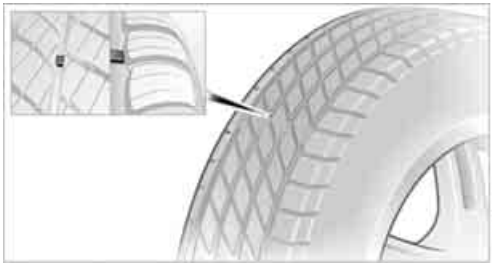
Designation for specially reinforced tires.

Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 1/8 in/ 3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 1/16 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 1/8 in/ 3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.
When winter tires wear down past a tread depth of 1/6 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less suitable for winter conditions. In the interest of safety, new tires should be installed.



Wear indicators in the base of the tread groove are distributed around the tire's circumference; the letters TWI, for Tread Wear Indicator, on the tire's sidewalls identify tires that incorporate these wear indicators. Once the tire tread has worn down to the wear indicators, the tire has worn to a depth of 1/16 in/1.6 mm.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazard and consequential damages.

Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. The same applies to any other abnormal road behavior, such as pulling severely to the right or left.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there.
Otherwise, tire damage can pose a lethal hazard to vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

FarmaSos.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Run-flat tires

The symbol identifying run-flat tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall.
Run-flat tires comprise a conditionally self-supporting tire and a special rim. The reinforcement in the sidewalls ensures that the tire can continue to be used subject to certain restrictions, even if depressurized.

For information on continuing to drive with a flat tire, refer to Indication of a flat tire on page 78.

New wheels and tires

Have new wheels and tires installed only by your BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

BMW recommends that you do not use retreaded tires, since driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include potentially different tire casing structures and often wide variations in tire age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

Correct wheels and tires

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires and vice versa, mount run-flat tires for your own safety. In the event of a flat, no spare wheel is available. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions, which could lead to body contact and thus to severe accidents. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot guarantee their driving safety.◀

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

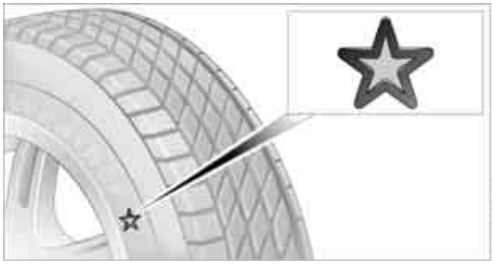
The correct combination of wheels and tires is also necessary to ensure reliable operation of various vehicle systems such as ABS, DSC or FTM.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single brand and tread configuration. After a tire has been damaged, mount the previous wheel and tire combination again as soon as possible.

Wheels with Tire Pressure Monitor TPM electronics

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires, or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics; otherwise, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not be able to detect a puncture, refer to page 80. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

Recommended tire brands



Certain makes of tire are recommended by BMW for each tire size. They are marked with a clearly visible BMW designation on the sidewall of the tire.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

When properly used, these tires meet the highest standards in terms of safety and handling characteristics.

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for winter roads or at temperatures below +45 °F /+7 °C. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Pay attention to speed

Always comply with the speed limit for the winter tires mounted on your car; failure to do so could result in tire damage and accidents.◀

If the car is capable of speeds higher than that permitted for the winter tires, a label stating the maximum permitted speed for the mounted tires must be displayed in your field of view. Specialist tire dealers and your BMW center can supply these labels.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire.

Swapping wheels between axles

BMW advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles, even if all tires have the same size, as this could impair driving characteristics. If the tires are of mixed sizes, swapping wheels between the axles is not permissible.

Snow chains*

Only certain fine-link snow chains have been tested by BMW, classified as safe for use and recommended. Consult your BMW center for more information. Snow chains must be mounted in pairs and on the rear wheels only. Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with chains.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor if snow chains are mounted; otherwise, the instrument might issue an incorrect reading. When driving with snow chains, you may find it helpful to activate DTC temporarily, refer to page 76.◀

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Under the hood

Do not work on the car unless you possess the necessary technical knowledge. If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a BMW center or by a workshop that work according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Hood

Releasing

Pull the lever.

Opening

To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windshield before you open the engine compartment. Do not open the engine hood before the engine has cooled down; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

Press the release handle and open the hood.

Closing

Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

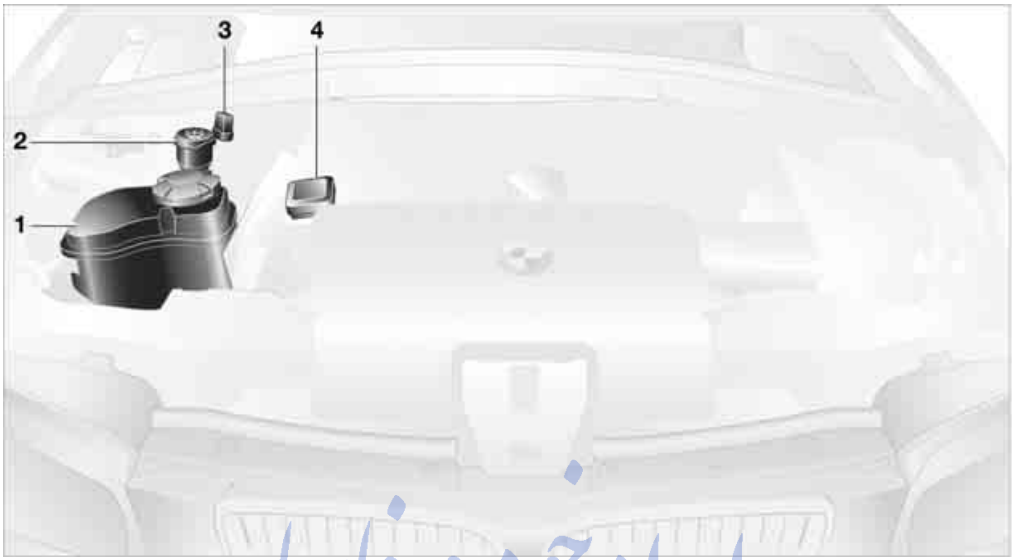
Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.

If you see any signs while driving your vehicle that the hood is not completely closed, stop at once and close it securely.◀

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Important parts of the engine compartment



امداد خودرو فارما

1 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 201

2 Washer fluid filler neck for headlamp cleaning system and window washer system, refer to page 61

3 Jump-starting connection, refer to page 216

4 Fluid filler neck for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil, page 201

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

FarmaSOS.com

Checking oil level

Your car is equipped with an electronic oil-level monitor.

For precise measurement and display of the oil level, the engine must be at operating temperature, i.e. following at least 6.2 miles/10 km of uninterrupted driving. You can have the oil level displayed while you are driving, or while the vehicle is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running.

Display in the instrument cluster

1. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol is shown in the display, accompanied by the word "OIL".
2. Press button **2**.
The oil level is checked and the reading displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Possible displays

1 Oil level OK

2 Oil level is being checked.
This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface, or about 5 minutes while the car is on the move.

3 Oil level down to minimum:
Add engine oil as soon as possible, but no more than 1 US quart/1 liter, refer also to Adding engine oil on page 201.

4 Oil level is too high.

Too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay.◀

5 The oil level sensor is defective.
Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, refer to page 203. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display via iDrive

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Engine oil level"

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level OK"

▷ "Measurement not possible at this time."

▷ "Measuring engine oil level...":
This can take about 1 minute if the car is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running, and about 5 minutes while the car is moving.
If engine oil was added, it may take up to 30 minutes to obtain an oil level reading.

▷ "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!"
Add engine oil as soon as possible, but no more than 1 US quart/1 liter, refer also to Adding engine oil below.
If the oil level is below the minimum value, add engine oil immediately to avoid engine damage.

▷ "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked."*:

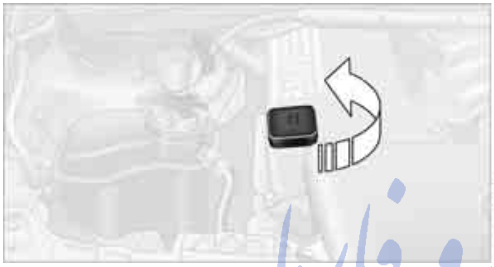
امداد خودرو فارسا
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, the excess oil may lead to engine damage.◀

▷ "Measurement inactive. Have this checked.":
Do not add engine oil. Before continuing to drive, note the recalculated remaining mileage until the next oil change service, refer to Service requirements on page 67. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil



Do not add 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil until a corresponding message is shown on the Control Display. Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km; otherwise, the engine could be damaged.◀

Keep oils, greases, etc. out of the reach of children and comply with the relevant warnings on the containers. Otherwise, health hazards may result.◀

Oil change

Have oil changed only at your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Specified engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW routinely approves specific oils after testing them extensively.

Do not use oil additives as these may cause engine damage.◀

Only use approved BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil.

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is not available, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils in between oil changes. Only use oils with the API SM specification or higher.

Your BMW center will be glad to answer any questions regarding BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity ratings

Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is categorized in SAE classes.

Selecting the appropriate SAE class depends on the regional climatic conditions in which you normally drive your BMW.

Approved oils belong to the 0W-40, 0W-30, 5W-40 and 5W-30 SAE classes.◀

These oils can be used for driving at all outside temperatures.

BMW recommends Castrol

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSoft.com

Coolant

Do not add coolant to the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

Coolant consists of half water and half additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may result. Because additives are harmful to your health, it is important to follow the instructions on the containers.◀

Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Checking coolant level

1. Do not open the engine hood before the engine has cooled down.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank a little counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct if it is between the maximum and minimum marks in the filler neck, refer also to the diagram next to the filler neck.

4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System

The BMW Maintenance System supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The objective is to optimize efforts with respect to minimal vehicle maintenance costs.

If and when you come to sell your BMW, a comprehensive record of servicing will prove a significant benefit.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

On the Control Display, you can have the remaining times or distances for selected maintenance tasks and any legally prescribed dates displayed, refer to page 67:

- Engine oil
- Brake pads: separately for front and rear
- Brake fluid
- Vehicle check
- Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

Service data in the remote control

Your vehicle continuously stores service-requirement information in the remote control while you are driving. Your BMW Service Advisor can read out this data from the remote control unit, and propose an optimized maintenance approach. Whenever you take your car in for servicing you should therefore hand your BMW Service Advisor the remote control unit that you last used.

Make sure that the date is always set correctly, refer to page 70; otherwise, the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not assured.◀

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

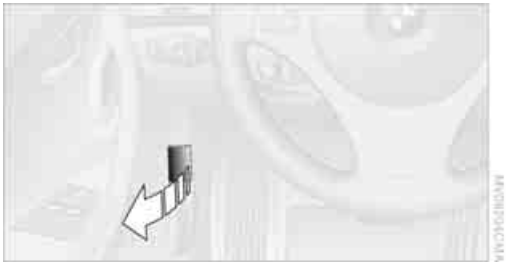
BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.

Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

FarmaSec.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis OBD



On the driver's side is an OBD socket for checking components relevant to the composition of the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

The warning lamp lights up:
The vehicle is producing higher emissions. The trip can be continued. Have the car checked as soon as possible.

Canadian models display this warning lamp.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This indicates excessive misfiring in the engine. If this happens, you should reduce your speed and visit your nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Severe engine misfiring can quickly lead to serious damage of emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter.

The warning lamp comes on if the gas cap is not properly tightened and the OBD system assumes that fuel vapor is escaping. Make sure that the gas cap is correctly positioned and close it until it audibly clicks.

Data recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring or diagnostic modules or a device for recording or sending certain vehicle data or information. In addition, if you have signed a service contract for BMW Assist, certain vehicle data may be transmitted or recorded in order to facilitate the corresponding services.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Care

Care products

Regular cleaning and care contributes significantly to the value retention of your BMW.

BMW recommends cleaning and caring for your vehicle with products that are approved by BMW for this purpose.

Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on the products and services available for cleaning and caring for your BMW.

Original BMW CareProducts have been material tested, laboratory checked and proven in the field, and offer optimal care and protection for your vehicle.◀

Do not use cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents as these may result in damage.◀

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous or hazardous to your health. Therefore, follow the warning and safety instructions on the packaging. When cleaning inside the vehicle, always open the doors or windows of the vehicle. In enclosed areas, provide for sufficient ventilation. Only use products designed for cleaning vehicles.◀

Exterior care

Washing the vehicle

Especially during the winter months, ensure that the vehicle is washed more frequently. Heavy soiling and road salt can lead to vehicle damage.◀

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, water can reduce braking efficiency over the short term and brake discs can corrode.◀

Automatic car washes

Preference should be given to cloth car washes.

Do not use high-pressure car washes; otherwise, water may drip into the vehicle around the windows.◀

Before driving into a car wash, ensure that it is suitable for your BMW. Check the following:

- Dimensions of your vehicle, refer to page 223.
- If necessary, fold in the outside rearview mirrors, refer to page 50.
- Maximum permissible tire width.

Avoid car washes with guide rail heights over 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, there is the danger of damaging chassis parts.◀

- In Convertibles, do not treat the convertible top with wax. Ensure that a program is available that does not apply wax or is designed specifically for convertibles.

Preparations before driving into an automatic car wash:

- Unscrew the rod antenna*.
- Deactivate the rain sensor* to prevent unintentional wiping.
- Remove additional attachments, e.g. spoilers or telephone antennas, if there is a possibility that they could be damaged.

Automatic transmission

Before driving into an automatic car wash, perform the following steps to ensure that the vehicle can roll:

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even with Comfort Access.
2. Engage transmission position N.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Switch off the engine.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Steam jets/high-pressure washers

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, ensure that you maintain sufficient clearance to the vehicle and do not exceed a temperature of 140 °F /60 °C.
Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure or temperature can lead to component damage or water penetration. Follow the operating instructions for the steam jet or high-pressure washer.◀

When using high-pressure washers, do not spray against the sensors and cameras, e.g. of the Park Distance Control or Rear View Camera, for an extended period and maintain a distance of at least 1 ft/30 cm.◀

Manual car wash

When washing the vehicle by hand, use large quantities of water and car shampoo if necessary. Clean the vehicle with a sponge or washing brush, applying light pressure only.

Before cleaning the windshield, deactivate the rain sensor or switch off the ignition to prevent unintentional activation of the wipers.◀

Observe local regulations pertaining to washing vehicles by hand.◀

Headlamps

Do not rub them dry and do not use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents.

Loosen dirt, e.g. insects, with shampoo or insect remover and wash away with copious quantities of water.

Thaw ice with a windshield deicer and do not use an ice scraper.

Windows

Clean the inside and outside surfaces of the windows and the mirrors with window cleaner.

Do not clean the mirrors with cleaners containing quartz.◀

Convertible top care

The appearance and life of the convertible top depend on proper care and operation.

Follow these instructions:

- Do not fold the convertible top into the convertible top box when the top is wet or frozen, as this may cause water spots, mold stains or chafed areas.
- If water spots occur on the inside headliner despite precautions, remove them using a microfiber cloth and interior cleaner.
- If the vehicle is parked in enclosed areas for extended periods, ensure that there is sufficient ventilation.
- Remove bird droppings immediately, as their corrosive ingredients attack the convertible top and damage the rubber seals.

To remove stains from the convertible top, do not use stain removers, paint thinners, solvents, benzine or similar substances. These substances may damage the rubber parts. Improper care and cleaning may cause the convertible top and convertible top seams to become leaky.◀

To remove heavy soiling, use a special convertible top cleaner.
Follow the manufacturer's instructions for use.

After washing the convertible top three to five times, treat it with an impregnating agent.

Paintwork care

Regular care contributes to value retention and protects the paintwork against the long-term effects of damaging substances.

Region-specific environmental influences can damage the vehicle paintwork. Therefore, it is important to adapt the frequency and scope of car care accordingly.

Immediately remove aggressive materials such as spilled fuel, oil, grease, brake fluid, tree sap or bird droppings to prevent damage to the paintwork.

Repairing paintwork damage

Immediately repair scratches or similar damage, such as that caused by stones hitting the vehicle, where necessary to prevent rusting.◀

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

BMW recommends having paintwork damage repaired by a professional paint repair workshop according to BMW specifications using original BMW paint materials.

Preservation

A preservation treatment is necessary when water no longer beads off the clean paintwork surface. Only use products for paintwork preservation that contain carnauba or synthetic waxes.

Rubber seals

Treat only with water or rubber care products.

Do not use silicon-containing care products on rubber seals; otherwise, noise and damage could occur.◀

Chrome parts

Carefully clean vehicle parts such as the radiator grill, door handles or window frames with copious quantities of water and a shampoo additive, especially when roads are treated with de-icing salt. For additional treatment, use a chrome polish.

Light-alloy wheels

For technical reasons, dust is generated during braking that is deposited on the light-alloy wheels. Remove the dust regularly using acid-free rim cleaner.

Do not use aggressive, acidic, strongly alkaline and abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets over 140 °F /60 °C; otherwise, damage may occur.◀

Outside sensors/cameras

Keep the sensors and cameras on the outside of the vehicle, e.g. those for Park Distance Control, clean and free of ice to ensure that they remain fully functional.◀

Interior care

Upholstery fabrics/cloth trims/ Alcantara fabrics

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner to remove superficial dirt.

To remove severe spots such as stains from beverages, use a soft sponge or lint-free microfiber cloth and suitable interior cleaners. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using a sweeping motion. Avoid strong rubbing.◀

Opened Velcro fasteners on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that Velcro fasteners are closed.◀

Leather/leather trim

The leather used by BMW is a high quality natural product. Slight irregularities in the leather are a typical characteristic of natural leather.◀

Dust and road grit in the pores and folds of the leather have an abrasive effect, leading to increased wear and causing the leather surface to become brittle prematurely. Therefore, frequently clean the leather of dust using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently as dust and dirt are more noticeable.

Treat the leather at least once every two months using a leather lotion as dirt and grease will gradually attack the leather's protective layer.

Carpets/cargo area

You can vacuum the carpets and floor mats or clean them with interior cleaner if heavily soiled.

The floor mats can be removed for cleaning. When replacing the mats, ensure that the seat rails do not extend over the floor mats, as this may damage the mats.

FarnaSOS.com ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۰

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Lint on the floor mats occurs for technical reasons and can be removed by vacuuming repeatedly.

Interior plastic parts

- Imitation leather surfaces
- Lamp glasses
- Display pane of instrument cluster
- Matte parts

Clean with water and solvent-free plastic cleaner if necessary.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trim and fine wood parts with a damp cloth. Wipe dry with a soft cloth.

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Do not clean chemically, as this may destroy the webbing.◀

Interior sensors/cameras

To clean interior sensors and cameras, e.g. of the high-beam assistant, use a lint-free cloth moistened with glass cleaner.

Displays

To clean displays, e.g. of the radio or instrument cluster, use a cleaning cloth for displays or a soft, non-abrasive, lint-free cloth.

Avoid applying excessive pressure when cleaning the displays; otherwise, damage may occur.◀

Do not use chemical or abrasive household cleaning agents. Keep all types of fluid away from the device. Otherwise, surfaces or electrical components may be corroded or damaged.◀

CD/DVD drives

Do not use a cleaning CD, as it may damage parts of the drive.◀

Vehicle storage

If your vehicle is to be decommissioned for longer than three months, your BMW center or a workshop that operates according to BMW specifications will be glad to advise you.

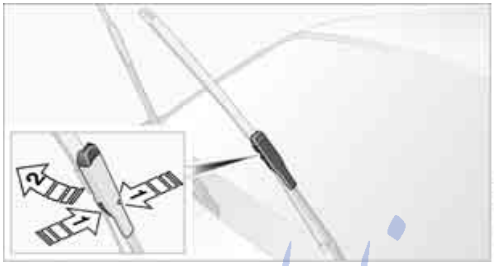
امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Replacing components

Onboard vehicle tool kit

The onboard vehicle tool kit is stored below the floor mat in the cargo area.

Wiper blades



1. Fold out the wiper arm and hold it.
2. Press together the locking spring, arrows **1**, and fold out the wiper blade, arrow **2**.
3. Take the wiper blade out of the catch mechanism, pulling the blade toward the front.

To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windshield before you open the engine compartment.◀

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. They should, therefore, be handled carefully. BMW recommends having your BMW center perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at your BMW center.

When working on electrical systems, always begin by switching off the consumer in question; otherwise, short-circuits could result. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

If the routine for changing a particular bulb is not described here, please contact your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.◀

Light-emitting diodes LED

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers or expose the eyes directly to the unfiltered light source for several hours; otherwise, this could cause irritation of the retina.◀

Xenon lamps*

These bulbs have a very long service life and are highly unlikely to fail. If a xenon lamp fails nevertheless, switch on the fog lamps and continue the journey with great care, provided that local legislation does not prohibit this.

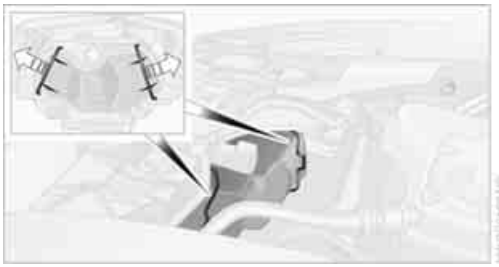
Have any work on the xenon lamp system, including bulb replacements, performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, if such work is carried out improperly, the high voltage in the system presents the danger of fatal injuries.◀

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Removing the headlamp cover

1. Pull the wire brackets over the notches, see arrows, and fold to the side.



2. Fold away the headlamp cover.

Be careful when attaching the headlamp cover and ensure that both wire brackets are securely in place; otherwise, leaks could occur and cause damage to the headlamp system.◀

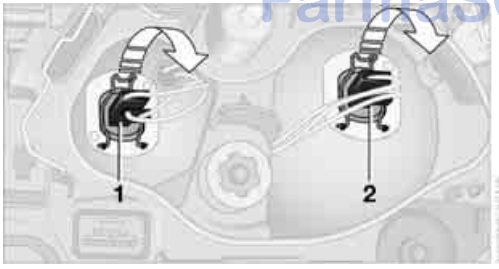
Attach the headlamp cover in reverse order.

Halogen headlamps

Halogen low beams and high beams

H7 bulb, 55 watts

Always wear gloves and eye protection; the atmosphere within the H7 bulb is pressurized. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury if the bulb is damaged.◀



The figure shows the right-hand headlamp.

1 High beams

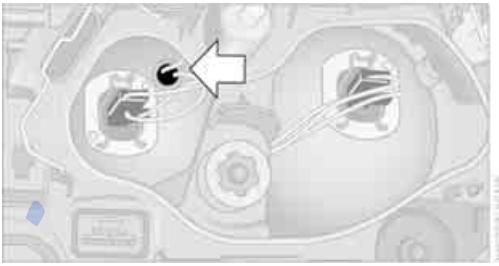
2 Low-beam headlamps

1. Remove the headlamp cover.
2. Fold down the holding bracket.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.
4. Reattach the bulb holder with the notch at the top.
5. Fold the holding bracket back up and let it snap into place.
6. Attach the headlamp cover.

Parking lamps, roadside parking lamps

W5W bulb, 5 watts

1. Remove the headlamp cover.



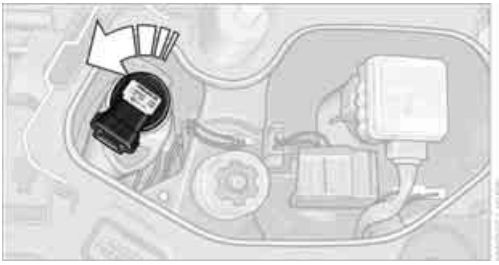
The figure shows the right-hand headlamp.

2. Pull out the bulb holder.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.
4. Reinsert the bulb holder.
5. Attach the headlamp cover.

Xenon headlamps

Parking lamps, roadside parking lamps, daytime running lights

H8 bulb, 35 watts



The figure shows the right-hand headlamp.

1. Remove the headlamp cover.
2. Turn the bulb, see arrow, and remove it.
3. Pull off the connector and replace the bulb.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

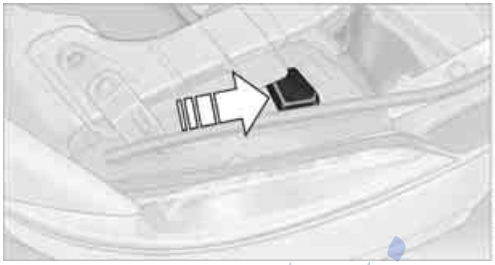
4. Attach the connector, insert the bulb and turn it all the way in the opposite direction.
5. Attach the headlamp cover.

Corner-illuminating lamps

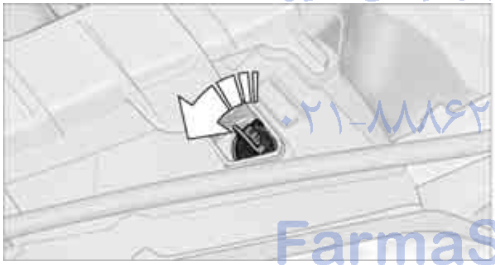
H3 bulb, 55 watts

The figure shows the right-hand headlamp.

1. Remove the top headlamp cover, using the screwdriver to push the detents to one side.



2. Turn the bulb holder, see arrow, and remove it.



3. Slide the bulb out of the holder and pull off the connector.
4. Replace the bulb and attach the connector.
5. Insert the bulb holder and turn it all the way in the opposite direction.
6. Attach the headlamp cover.

Turn signals, front

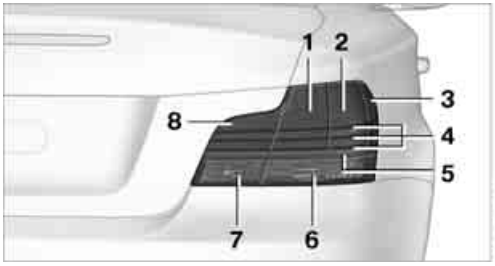
PY21W bulb, 21 watts

The turn signal bulb can be changed via a cover in the wheel arch.

1. Turn the respective wheel inwards.
2. Using a coin, turn both locks of the cover all the way to the left, arrows **1**, and remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove it, arrow **2**.
4. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the right for removal and replacement.
5. Insert the bulb holder and lock it by turning it to the right.
6. Attach the cover by positioning the bottom edge first and then turning both locks all the way to the right.

Tail lamps

- Turn signal:
  PY21W bulb, 21 watts
- Backup lamp:
  W16W bulb, 16 watts
- Brake lamps:
  P21W bulb, 21 watts
- Brake Force Display lamp:
  H21W bulb, 21 watts



1 Inner brake lamp

2 Outer brake lamp

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۰
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3 Lateral reflector
4 Roadside parking lamp and tail lamp LED
5 Reflector
6 Turn signal
7 Backup lamp
8 Brake Force Display lamp

Replacing tail lamps

Outer brake lamp

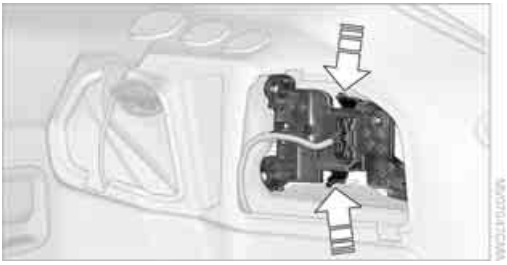
The outer brake lamp can be accessed through a single socket.

The figure shows the right side of the vehicle.

1. Remove the cover from the panel of the cargo area.
2. Turn the bulb holder to the left, see arrow, and remove it.
3. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
4. Attach the bulb holder and turn it all the way in the opposite direction.
5. Reattach the cover.

The roadside parking lamp/tail lamp uses LED design. After replacing the bulb, ensure that the bulb holder is properly seated; otherwise, the roadside parking lamp/tail lamp may not work.◀

Inner brake lamp, turn signal, backup lamp and Brake Force Display lamp



The bulbs are integrated in a single bulb holder.

1. Remove the cover from the panel of the cargo area.
2. Detach the bulb holder by pressing together the clips, see arrows, and remove it.
3. Brake lamps and turn signal: apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
4. Backup lamp: pull the bulb out of the socket and replace it.
5. Attach the bulb holder and let it snap into place.
6. Reattach the cover.

License plate lamps and center brake lamp

These lamps use LED technology for operation. In the event of a malfunction, please contact your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Changing wheels

Your BMW is equipped with run-flat tires as standard. This removes the need to change a wheel immediately in the event of a puncture.

For information on continuing to drive with a damaged tire, refer to Indication of a flat tire on page 78.

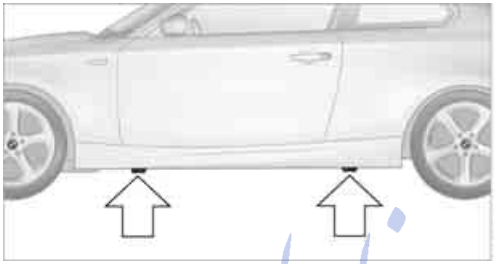
The symbol identifying run-flat tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall, refer to Run-flat tires, page 196.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires and vice versa, mount run-flat tires for your own safety. In the event of a flat, no spare wheel is available. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you. Refer also to New wheels and tires, page 196.

The tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from your BMW center.◀

Jack mounting points



The jacking points are at the positions shown in the illustration.

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate. Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Charging the battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine off. Connections, refer to Jump-starting on page 216.

Disposal

Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or bring them to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always secure the battery against tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, the functioning of some equipment may be limited and require reinitialization. Individual settings may likewise have been lost and will have to be programmed:

- Time and date
  These values must be updated, refer to page 69.
- Radio
  In some cases, stations may have to be stored again, refer to page 139.
- Navigation system
  Wait for the system to start, refer to page 133.
- Glass roof
  It may happen that the roof can only be raised. The system must be initialized. Please contact your BMW center.
- Seat and mirror memory*
  The positions must be stored again, refer to page 48.
- Inside rearview mirror with digital compass
  The system must be calibrated, refer to page 98.
- Active steering
  The system automatically initializes itself briefly during a trip. The system is deactivated during this time, refer to page 82.

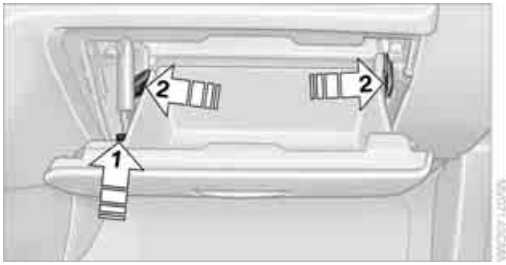
Fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; otherwise, this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀

ایران خودرو فارسا
۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarsaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

In the glove compartment



Accessing the fuse box:

1. Open the glove compartment.
2. Remove the damper, arrow **1**, from the lower holder by applying forward pressure.
3. Disengage the glove compartment by pressing on both tabs, arrows **2**, and fold it down.

Plastic tweezers are located on the distributor box.
Information on fuse assignment can be found next to the distributor box.

Spare fuses are available from your BMW center.

After replacing a fuse, press the glove compartment upward until it engages and reattach the damper.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱۰۸۸۸۶۳۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency Request*

Conditions for an Emergency Request:

- Full preparation package mobile phone: this equipment makes it possible to send an Emergency Request even if no mobile phone is paired with the vehicle.
- BMW Assist is activated. Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 182.
- Radio readiness is on.
- The BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network.
- The Emergency Request system is operable.

Once your service contract for BMW Assist expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. Once the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, Emergency Requests are not possible. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after a new contract has been signed.

۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روز
FarmaSOS.com

Sending an Emergency Request

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open.

2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.

As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

Once the BMW Assist Response Center has received your Emergency Request, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you. Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center will be able to initiate further steps to assist you under certain conditions.

If the circumstances allow this, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

Data for determining the necessary rescue measures are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. the current position of your vehicle, if it can be determined.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. You may still be heard by the BMW Assist Response Center, however.

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is sent automatically immediately after a severe accident. This Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by the button being pressed.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request service cannot be guaranteed for the most unfavorable conditions.◀

Roadside Assistance

The BMW Roadside Assistance is there to assist you around the clock in the event of a breakdown, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

First aid pouch*

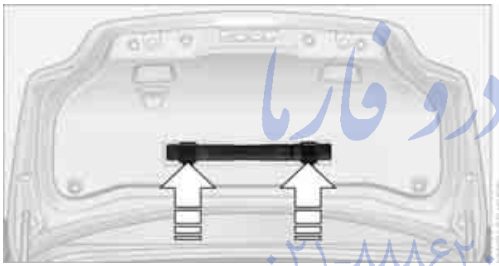
Some of the articles contained in the first aid pouch have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents reg-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

ularly and replace any items in good time, if necessary.

The first aid pouch is located on the right-hand side of the cargo area in a storage area.

Warning triangle*



The warning triangle is located in a holder in the trunk lid. Press the tabs to take it out.

Jump-starting

If the car's own battery is flat, your BMW's engine can be started by connecting two jumper cables to another vehicle's battery. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Only use jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

Do not touch any electrically live parts when the engine is running, or a fatal accident may occur. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any consumers in both vehicles.

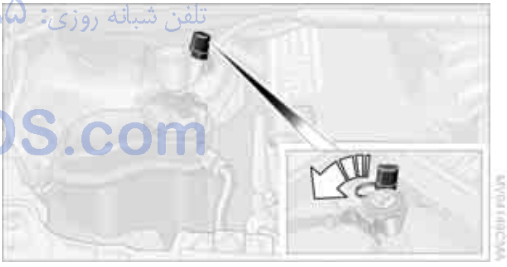
There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order to prevent sparking at the battery, which could cause injury.◀

Your BMW has a jump-starting connection in the engine compartment which acts as the battery's positive terminal, refer also to the Engine compartment overview on page 199. The cap is marked with +.

1. Pull the cap of the BMW jump-starting connection up to remove.



2. Attach one terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Your BMW has a special nut as body ground or negative pole.

5. Attach the second terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at slightly increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first start attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the above connecting sequence.

If necessary, have the battery checked and recharged.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting, towing away

Observe the applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing vehicles.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Using a tow fitting

The screw-in tow fitting must always be carried in the car. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

It is stored with the onboard vehicle tool kit underneath the floor mat in the cargo area, refer to page 209.

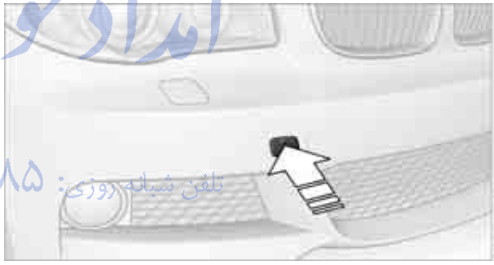
Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in. Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise, the tow fitting and the vehicle could be damaged.◀

Access to screw thread

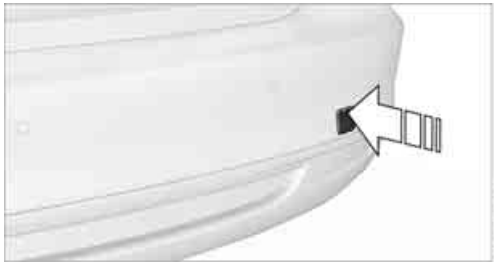
Rectangular cover panel in bumper:

Press the arrow on the cover.

Front



Rear



Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 55; otherwise, the low-beam headlamps, tail lamps, turn signal indicators and windshield wipers may be unavailable. Power steering assistance is not available when the engine is not running. Thus, braking and steer-

ایران خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

ing will require increased effort. Active steering is not active and it will be necessary to turn the steering wheel further.◀

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Automatic transmission

Selector lever in position N.
Changing the selector lever position, refer to page 58.

Do not exceed a towing speed of 45 mph/ 70 km/h and a towing distance of 90 miles/150 km; otherwise, the automatic transmission may be damaged.◀

Towing methods

Do not lift the vehicle by a tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◀

With a tow bar

The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle; otherwise, it may be impossible to maintain control.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an angle, please observe the following:

- Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

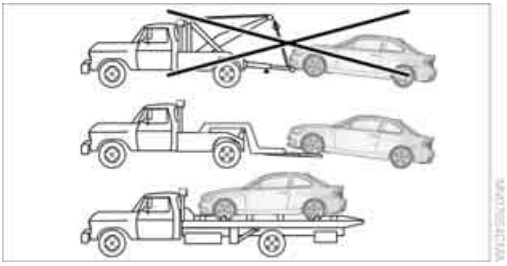
Attach the tow bar to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

With a tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Attach the tow rope to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

With a tow truck



Have the BMW transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar, or on a flatbed.

Do not tow the vehicle with just the rear axle raised as this may cause the steering to turn.

Tow-starting

Avoid tow-starting the vehicle whenever possible; instead, jump-start the engine, refer to page 216. Vehicles with a catalytic converter should only be tow-started when the engine is cold, vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be tow-started at all.

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 55.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch depressed all the way and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch completely again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Reference

This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice activation system and an index that will help you find information most quickly.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Technical data

Engine data

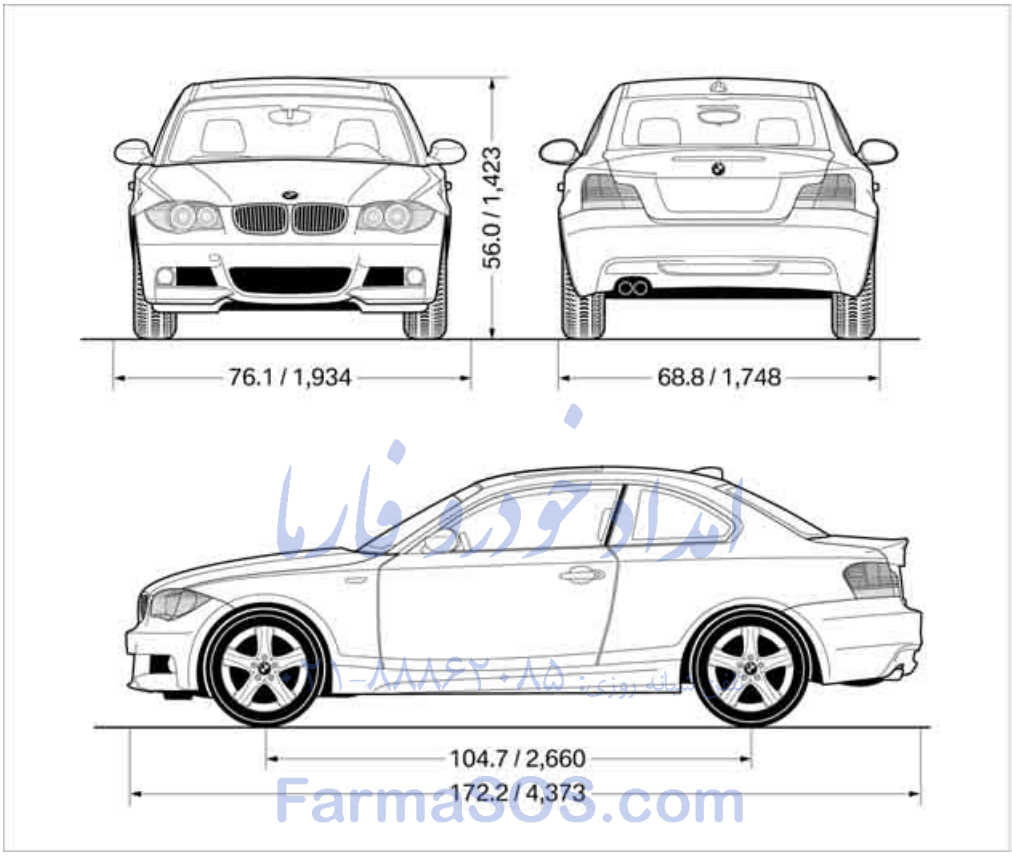
		128i	135i
Displacement	cu in/cm³	182.8/2,996	181.8/2,979
Number of cylinders		6	6
Maximum power output	hp	230	300
at engine speed	rpm	6,500	5,800
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	200/270	300/407
at engine speed	rpm	2,750	1,400 - 5,000

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Dimensions

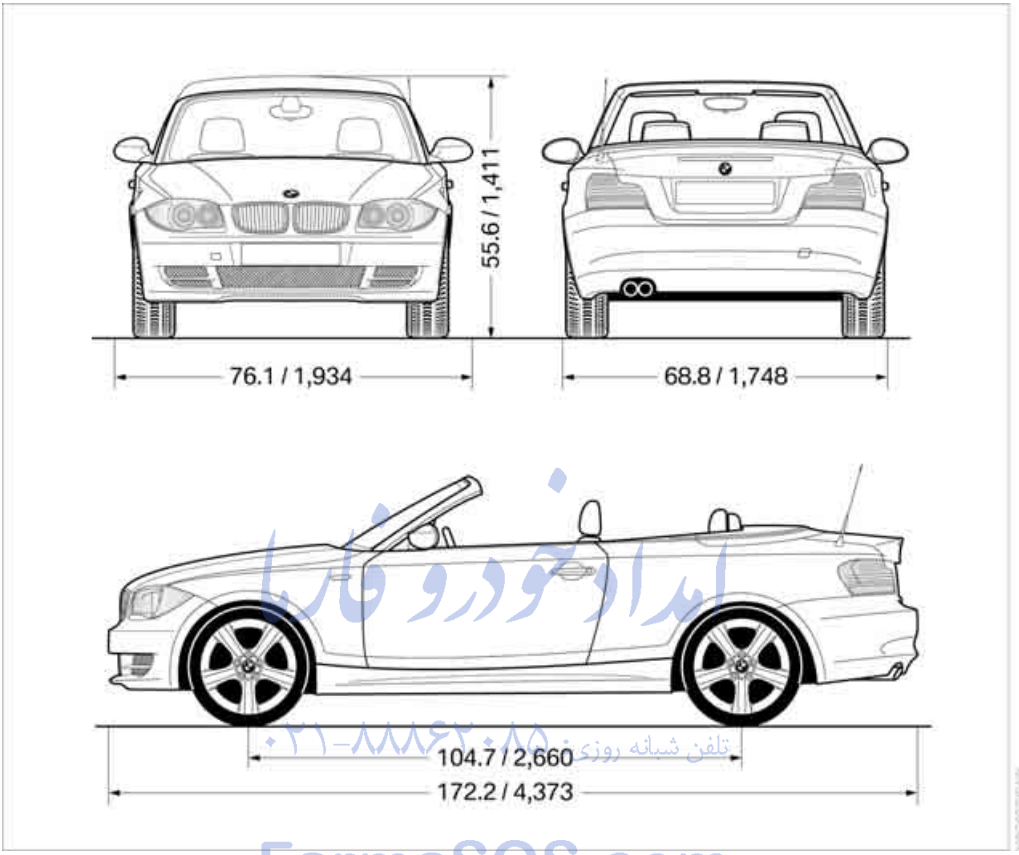
Coupe



All dimensions given in inches/mm.
Smallest turning circle dia.: 35.1 ft/10.7 m
135i: height 55.4 in/1,408 mm

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Convertible



ایداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

All dimensions given in inches/mm.
Smallest turning circle dia.: 35.1 ft/10.7 m.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Weights

Coupe

		128i	135i
Approved gross weight			
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,134/1,875	4,255/1,930
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	4,211/1,910	4,266/1,935
Load	lbs/kg	794/360	794/360
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,028/920	2,116/960
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,249/1,020	2,249/1,020
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft/liters	13.1/370	13.1/370

Convertible

		128i	135i
Approved gross weight			
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,398/1,995	4,564/2,070
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	4,475/2,030	4,575/2,075
Load	lbs/kg	772/350	772/350
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,050/930	2,149/975
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,447/1,110	2,447/1,110
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	–	–
Cargo area capacity	cu ft/liters	9.1 - 10.7/260 - 305	9.1 - 10.7/260 - 305

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank:	US gal/liters	approx. 14.0/53	Fuel grade: page 189
including reserve of	US gal/liters	approx. 2.1/8.0	
Window washer system			For more details: page 61
including headlamp washers	US qt/liters	approx. 6.3/6.0	

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Short commands for the voice activation system*

With short commands you can carry out certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected. Here are the important short commands for the voice activation system.

Useful short commands

Function	Command
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Opening the tone control	›Tone‹
Opening the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the contacts*	›Contacts‹
Displaying the phone book*	›Phonebook‹
Opening services*	›Assist‹
Opening BMW Assist*	›B M W Assist‹
Opening the home address*	›Home address‹
Opening destination entry*	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance*	›Guidance‹

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

CD/Multimedia

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Playing back a CD	›C D on‹
Selecting a CD	›Select C D‹
Selecting a CD and track	›C D ... track ...‹ e.g. CD 3 track 5
Selecting a track	›C D track ...‹ e.g. track 5
Opening the CD and Multimedia menu	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD*	›C D and D V D‹
Displaying entertainment details on the split screen*	›Entertainment details‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Music collection

Function	Command
Calling up the current playback	›Current playback‹
Opening a music collection	›Music collection‹
Playing back a music collection	›Music collection on‹
Searching for music; opening the menu	›Music search‹
Playing back the most frequently played tracks	›Top fifty‹

External devices

Function	Command
Opening external devices	›External devices‹

Tone control

Function	Command
Opening the tone control	›Tone‹

Radio

امداد خودرو فارما

FM

Function	Command
Calling up the radio	›Radio‹
Calling up an FM station	›F M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual search‹
Selecting the frequency range	›Select frequency‹
Calling up a station	›Select station‹ e.g. W-PLJ

۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵ تلفن شبانه روزی
FarmaSOS.com

AM

Function	Command
Calling up an AM station	›A M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual search‹

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Calling up the satellite radio	›Satellite radio‹
Switching on the satellite radio	›Satellite radio on‹
Selecting a satellite radio channel	›Satellite radio channel ...‹ e.g. channel 2

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Presets

Function	Command
Opening the stored stations	›Presets‹
Choosing a stored station	›Select preset‹
Selecting a stored station	›Preset ...‹ e.g. stored station 2

Telephone

Function	Command
Opening the Telephone menu	›Telephone‹
Displaying the phone book	›Phonebook‹
Redialing	›Redial‹
Displaying accepted calls	›Received calls‹
Dialing a phone number	›Dial number‹
Displaying the list of messages	›Messages‹
Displaying Bluetooth devices	›Bluetooth‹

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Navigation

General information

Function	Command
Navigation menu	›Navigation‹
Opening destination entry	›Enter address‹
Entering an address	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance	›Guidance‹
Starting destination guidance	›Start guidance‹
Ending destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
Opening the home address	›Home address‹
Opening the route criteria	›Route preference‹
Opening the route	›Route information‹
Switching on the voice instructions	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeating a voice instruction	›Repeat voice instructions‹
Switching off the voice instructions	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Displaying the address book	›Address book‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Function	Command
Displaying the last destinations	›Last destinations‹
Opening the traffic bulletins	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Displaying the map	›Map‹
Map facing north	›Map facing north‹
Map in the direction of travel	›Map in direction of travel‹
Perspective map	›Map perspective view‹
Automatic map scaling*	›Map with automatic scaling‹
Changing the scale	›Map scale‹

Split screen* settings

Function	Command
Split screen	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switching off the split screen	›Turn off split screen‹
Adapting the split screen	›Split screen content‹
Split screen, current position	›Split screen current position‹
Split screen, map facing north	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen, direction of travel	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen, perspective	›Split screen perspective‹
Automatically scaling the split screen	›Split screen automatic scaling‹
Expanded intersection zoom on the split screen	›Splitscreen Exit ramp view‹
Split screen scale ... meters*	›Split screen scale ... meters‹ e.g. split screen scale of 100 meters
Split screen scale ... kilometers*	›Split screen scale ... kilometers‹ e.g. split screen scale of 5 kilometers
Split screen, highlighting traffic bulletins	›Split screen, Traffic Info map‹
Split screen, computer	›Split screen on board info‹
Split screen, trip computer	›Splitscreen trip computer‹

Destination guidance with intermediate destinations

Function	Command
Entering a new destination	›Enter address‹
Trip list	›Stored trips‹

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Contacts

Function	Command
Opening the contacts	›Contacts‹
My contacts	›My contacts‹
New contact	›New contact‹

BMW Assist

Function	Command
Opening BMW Assist*	›B M W Assist‹
Opening BMW Search*	›B M W Search‹

Vehicle information

Function	Command
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the trip computer	›Trip computer‹
Opening the vehicle information	›Vehicle info‹
Opening the vehicle status	›Vehicle status‹

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Settings

Vehicle

Function	Command
Opening the main menu	›Main menu‹
Opening the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the options	›Options‹
Settings on the Control Display	›Control display‹
Opening the time and date settings	›Time and date‹
Opening the language and unit settings	›Language and units‹
Opening the speed limit settings	›Speed‹
Opening the light settings	›Lighting‹
Opening the door lock settings	›Door locks‹

Equipment

Function	Command
Opening the air conditioning settings	›Climate‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Everything from A-Z

Index

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 76
Accessories, refer to The individual vehicle 5
Accident, reporting, refer to Emergency Request 215
Activated-charcoal filter 94
Active steering 81
Adaptive light control 87
Additives
– coolant 201
– engine oil 201
Address, entering 117, 123
Address for navigation
– entering 117
Airbags 83
– sitting safely 43
– warning lamp 84
Air conditioner 91
Air distribution
– automatic 92
Airing, refer to Ventilation 94
Air outlets, refer to Air vents 91
Air pressure, checking, refer to Tire inflation pressure 190
Air recirculation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 93
Air vents 91
Air volume 93
AKI, refer to Fuel specifications 188
Alarm system 32
– avoiding unintentional alarms 33
– interior motion sensor 32
– switching off an alarm 32
– tilt alarm sensor 32
Albums of music collection 156
ALL program 93
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 197
AM, waveband 139
Ambient air, refer to Recirculated-air mode 93
Antenna for mobile phone 166
Antifreeze
– coolant 201
– washer fluid 61
Antilock Brake System ABS 76
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 32
Anti-theft system 27
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 225
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 225
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 100
Arrival time
– computer 65
Ashtray 101
Assistance systems, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 76
AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 93
Audio 136
– controls 136
– switching on/off 136
– tone control 136
– volume 136
Automatic
– air distribution 92
– air volume 92
– cruise control 61
– headlamp control 86
Automatic car washes 205
Automatic climate control 91
– automatic air distribution 92
Automatic curb monitor 50
Automatic high beams and low beams, refer to High-beam assistant 88
Automatic lamps
– refer to Welcome lamps 86
Automatic recirculated-air control AUC 93
Automatic Service Request 184
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 57
– selector lever lock 58
– shiftlock 58
– towing 217
– tow-starting 217
AUTO program for automatic climate control 92
AUX-IN port 159
Available services 184
Average fuel consumption 65
– setting the units 67
Average speed 65
Avoid highways in navigation 126
Avoiding unintentional alarms 33
Axle loads, refer to Weights 225

B

Backrests, refer to Seats 44
Backrest width adjustment 45
Back seats, refer to Rear seats
– adjusting head restraints 46
Backup lamp, replacing bulb 212
Bag for skis, refer to Ski bag 103
Band-aids, refer to First aid pouch 215
Bar, refer to Tow-starting, towing away 218

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۴۳۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Base plate for telephone or mobile phone
– refer to Snap-in adapter 176
Bass, tone setting 136
Battery 213
– charging 213
– disposal 35, 213
– jump-starting 216
– temporary power failure 213
Battery for mobile phone 177
Battery renewal
– remote control for vehicle 34
Being towed 217
Belts, refer to Safety belts 49
Belt tensioner, refer to Safety belts 49
Beverage holders, refer to Cupholders 100
Blower, refer to Air volume 93
Bluetooth, activating/deactivating 168
BMW
– car shampoo 208
BMW Assist, activating 182, 184
BMW Assist 180
BMW Maintenance System 203
BMW Search 182
Bottle holders, refer to Cupholders 100
Brake Assist, refer to Dynamic Brake Control 76
Brake fluid
– service requirements 67
Brake Force Display 82
Brake lamps
– Brake Force Display 82
– replacing bulb 212
Brake pads, breaking in 108
Brake rotors 110
– brakes 108
– breaking in 108
Brakes
– ABS 76
– BMW Maintenance System 203
– braking safely 110
– breaking in 108
– parking brake 57
– service requirements 67
Brake system 108
– BMW Maintenance System 203
– breaking in 108
– disc brakes 110
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 215
Breaking in the clutch 108
Break-in period 108
Bulb changing, refer to Lamps and bulbs 209
Bulbs, changing 209
Button for starting the engine 55
Buttons on the steering wheel 11

C

California Proposition 65 warning 5
Call
– accepting 169
– ending 170
– rejecting 170
Calling, refer to Phone numbers, dialing 170
Can holders, refer to Cupholders 100
Capacities 226
Capacity of the cargo area 225
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 213
Car care, refer to Care 205
Care 205
– automatic car washes 205
– care products 205
– carpets 207
– CD/DVD drives 208
– chrome parts 207
– convertible top 206
– displays 208
– exterior 205
– fine wood parts 208
– headlamps 206
– high-pressure washer 206
– interior 207
– leather 207
– light-alloy wheels 207
– paintwork 206
– plastic parts 208
– rubber seals 207
– safety belts 208
– sensors and cameras 208
– upholstery and cloth trim 207
– washing the car manually 206
– windows 206
Cargo, securing 112
Cargo area
– capacity 225
– Comfort Access 34
– enlarging, refer to Through-loading system 102
– lamp, refer to Interior lamps 90
– lid, refer to Trunk lid 30
– opening from outside 31
Cargo area lid, refer to Trunk lid 30
Cargo area net, refer to Securing cargo 112
Cargo loading 111
– securing cargo 112
– stowing cargo 111
– vehicle 110
Car jack
– jacking points 213
Car key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 26

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Car phone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 100
– refer to separate Owner's Manual
Car phone, refer to Telephone 166
Car radio, refer to Radio 139
Car shampoo 208
Car wash 205
– with Comfort Access 56
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 109
CD, audio playback 147
CD changer 147, 151
– controls 136
– fast forward/reverse 149
– filling or emptying the magazine 152
– random play sequence 148
– selecting a track 147
– switching on/off 136
– tone control 136
– volume 136
CD player 147
– controls 136
– fast forward/reverse 149
– random play sequence 148
– selecting a track 147
– switching on/off 136
– tone control 136
– volume 136
Center armrest 100
Center brake lamp, replacing bulb 212
Center console, refer to Around the center console 14
Central key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 26
Central locking
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
Central locking system 27
– Comfort Access 33
Changes, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Changing the language on the Control Display 73
Changing wheels 212
Chassis number, refer to Engine compartment 199
Check Control 71
Checking oil level 199
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 53
Child restraint systems 52
Child seats 52
Chrome parts 208
Chrome polish 208
Cigarette lighter 101
Cleaning headlamps 61
– washer fluid 61
Cleaning your BMW, refer to Care 205
Clock 63
– 12h/24h mode 70
– setting the time and date 70
– setting time 69
Closing
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
Clothes hooks 100
Cold start, refer to Starting the engine 56
Combination instrument, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Comfort Access 33
– in a car wash 56
– replacing the battery 34
Comfort access, refer to Comfort Access 33
Comfort area, refer to Around the center console 14
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 55
Compass 98
Computer 64
– displays on Control Display 65
Computer, refer to iDrive 16
Concierge service 181
Condensation, refer to When the vehicle is parked 110
Condition Based Service CBS 203
Configuring settings, refer to Personal Profile 26
Confirmation signals for locking/unlocking the vehicle 28
Congestion
– refer to Route, bypassing sections 127
Connecting vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical appliances 101
Consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption 65
Contacts
– creating 178
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display 16
Control Display, refer to iDrive
– switching on/off 19
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
Controls and displays 10
Convenient operation
– windows 28
– windows with Comfort Access 34
– with Comfort Access 34
Convenient starting, refer to Starting the engine 56
Convertible
– rollover protection system 84
– top 38
– wind deflector 41
Convertible top
– Convenient opening 28
Convertible top care 206
Coolant 201
– checking level 202
– filling 202
Coolant temperature 64
Cooling, maximum 92
Cooling fluid, refer to Coolant 201
Copyright 2
Corner-illuminating lamps 87

Farmanet.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Corner-illuminating lamps, refer to Adaptive light control 87
Cornering lamps, refer to Adaptive light control 87
Country codes DVD 149
Courtesy lamps 90
Criteria for route 126
Cross-hairs in navigation 122
Cruise control 61
Cruising range 65
Cupholders 100
Curb weight, refer to Weights 225
Current fuel consumption 65
Current playback
– external devices 161
– of music collection 156
Customer Relations 183

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Dashboard lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 89
Data
– dimensions 223
– sizes 223
Data, technical 222
– capacities 226
– engine 222
– weights 225
Data transfer 184
Date
– setting 70
– setting format 71
Daytime running lights, switch positions 87
DBC Dynamic Brake Control 76
Deactivating front passenger airbags 83
Deadlocking, refer to Locking 28
Decommissioning the vehicle, refer to Caring for your vehicle
Defect
– door lock 30
– fuel filler flap 188
– glass roof 37
Defogging windows 93
Defrosting the windows 93
Defrosting windows and removing condensation 93
Defrosting windshield, refer to Defrosting windows 93
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 93
Destination, entering by town/city name 117
Destination address
– entering 117, 123
Destination entry via BMW Assist 121
Destination for navigation
– entering by voice 123
– entering via map 122
– entry 117
– home address 120
– manual entry 117
Destination guidance 126
– bypassing a route section 127
– changing specified route 126
– continuing 126
– starting 126
– voice instructions 127
– volume of voice instructions 128
Differential, breaking in 108
Digital clock 63
Digital compass 98
Digital radio, refer to HD Radio 140
Dimensions 223
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 59
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 127
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 119
Displacement, refer to Engine data 222
Display, refer to Control Display 16
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 89
Displays, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Displays and controls 10
Disposal
– of coolant 201
– remote control battery 35
– vehicle battery 213
Distance, refer to Computer 65
Distance remaining to service, refer to Service requirements 67
Distance to destination, refer to Computer 65
Distance warning, refer to Park Distance Control PDC 75
Door key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 26
Door lock 29
Door lock, confirmation signals 28
Doors, emergency operation 30
DOT Quality Grades 194
Draft-free ventilation 94
Drinks holders, refer to Cupholders 100
Drive-off assistance, refer to DSC 76
Drive-off assistant 77
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 86
Driving notes 108
Driving off on hills, refer to Drive-off assistant 77
Driving stability control systems 76
Driving through water 110
Driving tips, refer to Driving notes 108
Dry air, refer to Cooling function 93
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 76

امداد خودرو ما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۷۶۰۸۵
FarmSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

DTC Dynamic Traction Control 76
– indicator lamps 76
DVD
– country codes 149
– settings 150
– video playback 149
DVD menu 150
DVD player, refer to CD player 147
DVD video 149
Dynamic Brake Control DBC 76
Dynamic destination guidance 127
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 76
Dynamic Traction Control DTC
– indicator lamps 77

E

EBV Electronic brake-force distribution 76
Eject button, refer to Buttons on the CD/DVD player 136
Electrical malfunction
– door lock 30
– fuel filler flap 188
– glass roof 37
Electronic brake-force distribution EBV 76
Electronic oil level check 199
Electronic Stability Program ESP, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 76
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– door lock 30
– fuel filler flap 188
– glass roof 37
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 59
Emergency release, trunk lid 31
Emergency Request 215
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 215
Energy, saving
– saving fuel 108
Engine
– breaking in 108
– data 222
– speed 222
– starting 56
– starting, Comfort Access 33
– switching off 56
Engine compartment 199
Engine coolant, refer to Coolant 201
Engine oil
– adding 201
– additives 201
– BMW Maintenance System 203
– checking level 199
– intervals between changes, refer to Service requirements 67
– specified engine oils 201
Engine output, refer to Engine data 222
Engine speed, refer to Engine data 222
Engine starting, refer to Starting the engine 56
Entry map for destination 122
Equalizer, tone setting 137
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 76
Event data recorders 204
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 109
Extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone 159
Exterior mirrors 49
– adjusting 49
– automatic dimming feature 51
– automatic heating 50
– folding in and out 50
External devices
– random sequence 161
Eyes
– for tow-starting and towing away 217
– for tying down loads 112

F

Failure messages, refer to Check Control 71
Failure of an electrical consumer 213
False alarm, refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms 33
Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 49
Fastest route for navigation 126
Fast forward
– CD changer 149
– CD player 149
Filter of automatic climate control, refer to Microfilter/activated charcoal filter 94
First aid pouch 215
Fixture for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 55
Flash when locking/unlocking 28
Flat tire
– run-flat tires 196
– Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 79
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 77
– indicating a flat tire 78
– initializing the system 77
– system limits 77
Flat tires, refer to Tire condition 195
FM, waveband 139
Fog lamps 89
– indicator lamp 13, 89
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 110
Footwell lamps 90
For your own safety 5
Free memory capacity, music collection 157
Front airbags 83
Front seat setting 43

Farnasir.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Frost, removing from windows, refer to Defrosting windows 93
FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 77
Fuel 188
– gauge 64
– high-quality brands 188
– quality 188
– specifications 188
– tank contents, refer to Capacities 226
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 64
Fuel consumption display, refer to Average fuel consumption 65
Fuel consumption statistics, refer to Average fuel consumption 65
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 64
Fuel filler flap 188
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 188
Fuses 213

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 96
Gasoline, refer to Required fuel 188
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 64
Gas station recommendations 127
Gear change
– with automatic transmission 58
– with manual transmission 57
Gear display, with automatic transmission 57
Gearshift lever
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 58
– manual transmission 57
General driving notes 109
Glass roof, electric 36
– closing after electrical malfunction 37
– Convenient operation 29
– opening, closing 36
– operation with Comfort Access 34
– pinch protection system 37
– raising 36
– remote control 28
Glove compartment 99
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 116
Grills, refer to Air vents 91
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 225

H

Halogen lamps
– replacing bulbs 210
Handbrake, refer to Parking brake 57
Hands-free system, refer to Microphone for hands-free mode 14
Hazard warning flashers 14
HD Radio 140
Head airbags 83
Headlamp control, automatic 86
Headlamp cover 210
Headlamp flasher 59
– indicator lamp 13
Headlamps
– replacing bulbs 210
Head restraints 45
Heated
– seats 48
– steering wheel 51
Heated mirrors 50
Heating
– mirrors 50
– seats 48
– steering wheel 51
Heating, rear window 93
Heating and ventilation 91
Heavy loads, refer to Stowing cargo 111
Height, refer to Dimensions 223
Height adjustment
– steering wheel 51
High-beam assistant 88
High beams 88
– indicator lamp 13
– replacing bulbs 210
High beams and low beams, automatic, refer to High-beam assistant 88
High-pressure washer 205, 206
High water, refer to Driving through water 110
Highways, refer to Route criteria 126
Hills 110
Holders for cups 100
Hood 198
Hot exhaust system 109
Hydraulic brake assist, refer to Dynamic Brake Control 76
Hydroplaning 109

I

IBOC, refer to HD Radio 140
Ice warning, refer to Outside temperature warning 63
Identification marks
– tire coding 194
iDrive 16
– adjusting brightness 74
– changing date and time 70
– changing language 73
– menu guidance 17
– operating principle 16
– setting the date and time 70
– status information 19
Ignition 55
– switched off 55
– switched on 55
Ignition key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 26
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 55

FarmaOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 55
Ignition lock 55
Imprint 2
Indicator and warning lamps 13
– Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 80
Indicator lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 89
Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile 26
Inflation pressure, tires 190
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 79
Initializing
– compass, refer to Calibrating 98
– radio, refer to Station, storing 139
– refer to Setting the time and date 70
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 77
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 127
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument lighting 89
Integrated key 26
Integrated universal remote control 96
Interactive map 122
Interior lamps 90
– remote control 28
Interior motion sensor 32
Interior rearview mirror 50
– automatic dimming feature 51
– compass 98
Intermittent mode of the wipers 60
Intersection, entering, navigation 118
iPod, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 159
iPod, connecting, refer to USB audio interface 159

J

Jacking points 213
Jets, refer to Air vents 91
Joystick, refer to iDrive 16
Jumpering, refer to Jump-starting 216
Jump-starting 216

K

Key, refer to Integrated key/ remote control 26
Keyless go, refer to Comfort Access 33
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort Access 33
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 26
Kickdown 58
Knock control 188

L

Lamps
– adaptive light control 87
– instrument lighting 89
– interior lighting 90
Lamps, refer to Parking lamps/ low beams 86
Lamps and bulbs, replacing bulbs 209
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 112
Last destinations 120
LATCH child restraint fixing system 53
Leather care 207
LED Light-emitting diodes 209
Length, refer to Dimensions 223
License plate lamp, replacing bulb 212
Light
– refer to High-beam assistant 88
Light-alloy wheels 207
Light control
– refer to High-beam assistant 88
Light-emitting diodes LED 209
Lighter 101
– socket 101
Lighting
– lamps and bulbs 209
– of instruments 89
– of vehicle, refer to Lamps 86
Light switch 86
Limit, refer to Speed limit 73
Load 111
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 112
Lock buttons of doors, refer to Locking 30
Locking
– adjusting confirmation signal 28
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
– without remote control, refer to Comfort Access 33
Locking and unlocking doors
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
Low beam control, refer to High-beam assistant 88
Low-beam headlamps 86
– automatic 86
– replacing bulbs 210
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 45
Luggage compartment, refer to Cargo area
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 112
Lumbar support 45

M

M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 197
Maintenance, refer to
– BMW Maintenance System 203
– Service booklet

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Maintenance system 203
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 71
Manual car wash 206
Manual operation
– door lock 30
– fuel filler flap 188
– glass roof 37
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 59
Manual operation with automatic transmission 58
Manual transmission 57
Map for navigation
– changing scale 129
– entering destination 122
Map view 128
Maximum cooling 92
Maximum speed
– for winter tires 197
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Messages 172
Messages from the concierge service 173
Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 94
Microphone for telephone 14
Mirror dimming feature 51
Mirrors 49
– automatic curb monitor 50
– exterior mirrors 49
– heating 50
– interior rearview mirror 50
Mobile phone
– adjusting volume 169
– connecting, refer to Mobile phone, pairing 166
– operation via iDrive 169
– pairing 166
Mobile phone, installation location, refer to Center armrest 100
Mobile phone, refer to Telephone 166
Mobile phone, refer to the separate Owner's Manual
Modifications, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Monitor, refer to iDrive 16
Monitoring system for tire pressures, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 77
MP3 player, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 159
MP3 player, connecting, refer to USB audio interface 159
Multi-channel playback 137
Multifunctional steering wheel, refer to Buttons on the steering wheel 11
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 59
– refer to Wiper system 60
Music, managing 157
Music collection 154
– backup 158
– deleting 158
– random sequence 157
– restoring 158
Music player, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 159
Music player, connecting, refer to USB audio interface 159
Music search 155
My Info 173

N

Navigation
– starting destination guidance after entering a destination 119
– storing a destination 119
– storing current position 119
– voice activation 123
Navigation announcements, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 127
Navigation data 116
Navigation system 116
– address book 119
– bypassing a route section 127
– continuing destination guidance 126
– destination entry 117
– dynamic destination guidance 127
– entering a destination by voice 123
– entering a destination manually 117
– frequently asked questions 133
– gas station recommendations 127
– planning a trip 124
– route list 127
– selecting destination via map 122
– selecting route criteria 126
– special destinations 120
– starting destination guidance 126
– terminating destination guidance 126
– traffic bulletins 129
– voice instructions 127
– volume adjustment 128
Neck support, refer to Head restraints 45
Nets, refer to Storage compartments 100
New tires 196
North-facing map 128
Number of cylinders, refer to Engine data 222

O

OBD socket, refer to Socket for Onboard Diagnosis 204
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 188
Odometer 63
Oil, refer to Engine oil 199
Oil consumption 199
Oil level 199

FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Old batteries, refer to Disposal 213
Onboard vehicle tool kit 209
Opening and closing
– Comfort Access 33
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
– using the door lock 29
– via the remote control 27
Options, selecting for navigation 126
Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 17
Outlets, refer to Ventilation 94
Output, refer to Engine data 222
Outside temperature display 63
– changing unit of measure 67
– on computer 67
Outside temperature warning 63
Overriding selector lever lock 59
Overview
– radio control 136

P

Paintwork care 206
Park assistant, refer to Park Distance Control 75
Park Distance Control PDC 75
Parked car ventilation 94
– preselecting switch-on times 95
– switching on and off directly 94
Parking
– vehicle 56
Parking aid, refer to Park Distance Control PDC 75
Parking brake 57
– indicator lamp 57
Parking lamps/low beams 86
– replacing bulbs 210
Parts and accessories, refer to The individual vehicle 5
Passenger-side mirror tilt function 50
Pathway lighting 87
Personal Profile 26
Phone book 169
Phone numbers
– dialing 170
Pinch protection system
– glass roof, electric 37
– windows 36
Placing a call, refer to telephone owner's manual
Playing music 155
Polish 208
Pollen, refer to Microfilter/ activated-charcoal filter 94
Postal code, entering for navigation 118
Power windows 35
Power windows, refer to Windows 35
Pressure, tires 190
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 77
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 79
Programmable buttons on the steering wheel 11
Programmable memory keys 20
Protection function, refer to Pinch protection system
– glass roof, electric 37
– windows 36
Providing medical assistance, refer to First add pouch 215
Puncture
– Flat Tire Monitor 77

R

Radio
– controls 136
– HD Radio 140
– satellite radio 142
– selecting a waveband 139
– storing stations 139
– switching on/off 136
– tone control 136
– volume 136
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 55
Radio readiness 55
– switched off 55
– switched on 55
Rain sensor 60
Random sequence
– external devices 161
– music collection 157
Reading lamps 90
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 211
Rear luggage rack 112
Rear seats
– adjusting head restraints 46
– folding down backrests 102
Rearview mirror, refer to Mirrors 49
Rear window defroster 93
Receiving level of mobile phone, refer to Status information 19
Reception
– quality 140
– radio station 140
Recirculated-air mode 93
Recirculation of air, refer to Recirculated-air mode 93
Reflectors, refer to Tail lamps 211
Refueling 188
Releasing
– hood 198
Remaining distance, refer to Computer 65
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 65

FarroSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Remote control 26
– battery renewal 34
– Comfort Access 33
– garage door opener 96
– malfunctions 29, 34
– removing from the ignition lock 55
– service data 203
– trunk lid 28
Remote control key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 26
Replacement fuses, refer to Fuses 213
Replacement remote control 26
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 209
Replacing tires, refer to New wheels and tires 196
Reporting safety defects 7
Reserve warning, refer to Fuel gauge 64
Reservoir for washer systems 61
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 138
Restraint systems, refer to Safety belts 49
Restraint systems for children 52
Retreaded tires 196
Reverse
– CD changer 149
– CD player 149
Reverse gear
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 58
– manual transmission 57
Road map 128
Roadside Assistance 181, 215
Roadside parking lamps 88
– replacing bulbs 210
Roadworthiness test, refer to Service requirements 67
Rollover protection system, Convertible 84
– resetting 85
Roof load capacity 225
Roof-mounted luggage rack 112
Rope, refer to Tow-starting, towing away 218
Rotary/pushbutton control, refer to Controller 16
Route 126, 127
– bypassing sections 127
– changing 126, 127
– changing criteria 126
– displaying streets or towns/cities 127
– map view 128
– selecting 126
Route instructions, refer to Destination guidance through voice instructions 127
Route map, refer to Map view 128
Route section, changing 127
Route selection 126
RSC Runflat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires 196
Runflat System Component RSC, refer to Run-flat tires 196
Run-flat tires 196
– continuing driving with a damaged tire 78
– flat tire 78
– new tires 196
– remaining driving distance, refer to Indication of a flat tire 78
– tire inflation pressure 190
– winter tires 197
Runflat tyres, refer to Run-flat tires 196

S

Safety-belt height adjustment 49
Safety belts 49
– damage 49
– indicator lamp 49
– reminder 49
– sitting safely 43
Safety systems
– airbags 83
– Antilock Brake System ABS 76
– Dynamic Stability Control DSC 76
– rollover protection system, Convertible 84
– safety belts 49
Safety tires, refer to Run-flat tires 196
Satellite radio 142
– enabling or unsubscribing from a channel 142
– favorites 144
– selecting channel 143
– storing channel 143
– timeshift 144
– Traffic Jump 145
Saving fuel 108
Screen, refer to iDrive 16
Screw thread for tow fitting 217
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 142
Seat and mirror memory 48
Seat belt reminder, refer to "Fasten safety belts" reminder 49
Seats 43
– heating 48
– sitting safely 43
Securing cargo 103, 104
Selecting a detour 132
Selecting new scale for navigation 129
Selector lever, automatic transmission with Steptronic 58
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 215
Service car, refer to Roadside Assistance 215

FarmaDS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Service data in remote control 203
Service Interval Display, refer to Condition Based Service CBS 203
Service Request 183
Service requirement display, refer to Condition Based Service CBS 203
Service requirements 67
Service status 184
Settings
– clock, 12h/24h format 70
– date format 71
– DVD 150
– language 73
Settings for the map view 129
Setting times, refer to Preselecting switch-on times 95
Shifting gears with automatic transmission with Steptronic 58
Shiftlock, refer to Changing selector lever positions 58
Short commands for the voice activation system 227
Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 126
Shuffled, refer to Random
– CD changer 148
– CD player 148
Side airbags 83
Side windows, refer to Windows 35
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10
Sitting safely 43
– airbags 43
– safety belt 43
Ski bag 103
Sliding/tilt sunroof, refer to Glass roof, electric 36
Slot for remote control 55
Smokers' package, refer to Ashtray 101
Snap-in adapter
– inserting/removing 176
– use 166
Snap-in adapter, refer to Center armrest 100
Snow chains 197
Socket, refer to Connecting electrical appliances 101
Socket for Onboard Diagnosis OBD 204
Sound, adjusting during audio playback, refer to Tone control 136
Sound output for entertainment on/off 136
Spare fuses 213
Special destinations 120
Special destinations, displaying 122
Special destinations, entering by name 121
Special oils, refer to Specified engine oils 201
Specified engine oils 201
Speed
– for winter tires 197
Speed display, refer to Speedometer 12
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 73
Speedometer 12
Speed Volume 137
Split screen content, refer to Display for split screen content, selecting 20
Sport program, automatic transmission with Steptronic 58
Spray nozzles, refer to Windshield washer nozzles 61
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 76
Start/stop button 55
– starting the engine 56
– switching off the engine 56
Starting, refer to Starting the engine 56
Starting assistance, refer to Jump-starting 216
Starting the engine
– start/stop button 55
Start menu 17
State/province, for navigation 117
Station, selecting
– radio 139
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5
Steam jet 205, 206
Steering wheel 51
– adjustment 51
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– heating 51
Steering with variable ratio, refer to Active steering 81
Steptronic, refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic 57
Storage 208
Storage compartment package 100
Storage compartments 100
Stored trip, opening 125
Storing
– seat position, refer to Seat and mirror memory 48
– telephone numbers, refer to separate Owner's Manual
Storing music 154
Storing tires 197
Stowage, refer to Storage compartments 100
Street, entering, navigation 118
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 190
Surround 137
SVCD 149
SW, waveband 139
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching off
– engine 56
Switching off the engine
– start/stop button 55

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۱۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Switching on
– audio 136
– CD changer 136
– CD player 136
– radio 136
Switching the cooling function on and off 93
Switch-on times of parked car ventilation, preselecting 95
Symbols 4
– status information 19

T

Tachometer 63
Tailgate, refer to Trunk lid 30
Tail lamp, refer to Tail lamps 211
– replacing bulb 212
Tail lamps 211
– replacing bulb 212
Tank contents, refer to Capacities 226
Technical changes 5
Technical data 222
Telephone 166
– voice commands 173
Telephone, installation location, refer to Center armrest 100
Telephone, refer to separate Owner's Manual
TeleService 180
TeleService Diagnosis 182
TeleService Help 182
Temperature, setting for automatic climate control 92
Temperature display
– outside temperature 63
– outside temperature warning 63
– setting the units 67
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 61
Thigh support 44
Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp 212
Three-point safety belt 49
Through-loading system 102
Tilt alarm sensor 32
Tilt function, passenger-side mirror 50
Timer, refer to Preselecting switch-on times 95
Tire inflation pressure 190
– loss 78, 79
Tire pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 77
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 79
– resetting the system 79
– system limitations 79
– warning lamp 80
Tire puncture, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 78
Tire Quality Grading 194
Tires
– age 194
– air loss 80
– breaking in 108
– changing, refer to Changing wheels 212
– condition 195
– damage 195
– inflation pressure 190
– labels 194
– minimum tread depth 195
– new tires 196
– pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 77
– pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 79
– puncture 78
– retreaded 196
– run-flat tires 196
– size 194
– wear indicators, refer to Minimum tread depth 195
– winter tires 197
TMC station, refer to Traffic bulletins 129
Tone
– control 136
– middle setting 138
Tools, refer to Onboard vehicle tool kit 209
Top 50 of music collection 156
Torque, refer to Engine data 222
Tow bar 218
Tow fitting 217
Tow fittings for tow-starting and towing away 217
Towing 217
– car with automatic transmission 217
– methods 218
Towing and tow-starting 217
Town/city, for navigation 117
Tow rope 218
Tow-starting 217
TPM, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 79
Track
– selecting on CD 147
Traction control, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 76
Traffic bulletins
– categories 131
Traffic bulletins, filtering 131
Traffic bulletins for navigation 129
– during destination guidance 131
– in map view 131
Traffic jam
– displaying traffic bulletins 129
Transmission
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 57
– manual transmission 57
Transporting children safely 52
Transport securing devices, refer to Securing cargo 112
Travel instructions, refer to Voice instructions 127
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread 195
Trip, deleting 125
Trip, storing 124

Farmanis.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Trip-distance counter, refer to Trip odometer 63
Triple turn signal activation 60
Trip odometer 63
Trips, changing 125
Trunk, refer to Cargo area
Trunk lid 30
– Comfort Access 34
– emergency release 31
– opening from outside 31
– unlocking with remote control 28
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 223
Turn signals 59
– indicator lamp 12
– replacing bulbs 211
– triple turn signal 60
Tying down loads, refer to Cargo loading 112

U

Underbody protection, refer to Caring for your vehicle
Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 194
Units of measure
– average fuel consumption 67
– temperature 67
Universal garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 96
Universal remote control 96
Unlatching, refer to Unlocking 27
Unlocking
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
– trunk lid 34
– without remote control, refer to Comfort Access 33
Unlocking without a key, refer to Comfort Access 33
Updating the navigation data 116
USB audio interface 159

V

VCD 149
Vehicle
– battery 213
– breaking in 108
– cargo loading 110
– decommissioning, refer to Vehicle storage
– dimensions 223
– Identification Number, refer to Engine compartment 199
– parking 56
– weight 225
Vehicle jack 213
Vehicle storage 208
Ventilation 94
– draft-free 94
Ventilation when parked, refer to Parked car ventilation 94
Vents, refer to Ventilation 94
Video menu 150
Video playback 149
Voice, refer to Destination guidance through voice instructions 127
Voice commands
– overview 22
– short commands 227
– telephone 173
Voice instructions from navigation system 127
– repeating 128
– switching on/off 127
– volume 128
Voice phone book 175
Volume 136
– audio sources 136
– fuel tank, refer to Capacities 226
– mobile phone 169
– voice instructions 128
Volume balance, tone setting 137

W

Warning and indicator lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 71
Warning triangle 216
Washer fluid 61
– content of the reservoir 61
Washer fluid filler neck 61
Waste tray, refer to Ashtray 101
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 110
Water penetration 205, 206
Waveband with the radio 139
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 195
Weights 225
Welcome lamps 86
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 223
Wheels, new 196
Wheels and tires 190
Width, refer to Dimensions 223
Windows 35
– Convenient operation 28
– Convenient operation with Comfort Access 34
– opening, closing 35
– pinch protection system 36
Windshield
– cleaning 61
– defrosting and removing condensation 93
Windshield wash
– filling capacity, reservoir 226
Windshield washer reservoir, refer to Washer fluid filler neck 61
Windshield washer system 60
– washer fluid 61
– washer nozzles 61
Windshield wiper blades, changing 209
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 60
Winter tires 197
– setting speed limit 73
– storage 197
Wiper blade replacement 209
Wiper system 60

FarnaShs.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Word-matching principle for navigation 125
Wrench/screwdriver, refer to Onboard vehicle tool kit 209

X

Xenon lamps
– replacing bulb 209

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

01 41 2 602 846 Ue iDrive

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 846 - © 08/09 BMW AG